INTRODUCTORY

LATIN BOOK

HARKNESS.

AUTHORIZED BY

THE EDUCATION DEPARTMENT OF ONTARIO

THE COPP CLARK CO., LIMITED, TORONTO.

LONDON PUBLIC LIBRARY
& ART MUSEUM
LONDON - ONTARIO

LONDON PUBLIC LIBRARY
& ART MUSEUM
LONDON - ONTARIO

AN

INTRODUCTORY

LATIN BOOK,

INTENDED AS AN

ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,

ON THE

INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN

INTRODUCTION

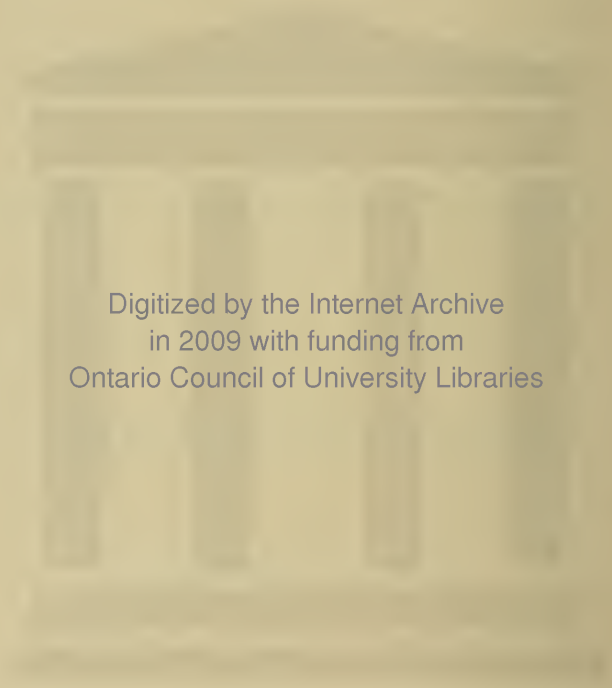
TO THE

AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS.

TORONTO:
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY (LIMITED),
1888.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/n105introductory00hark

PREFACE.

The volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

PROVIDENCE, R.I., June, 1866.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet	1
Sounds of Letters	2
Exercise I.	3
" II.	4
" III.	5
Syllables	6
Quantity	6
Accentuation	7
Exercise IV.	7

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender	8
Person and Number	9
Cases	9
Declensions	10
First Declension	11
Exercise V.	11
Second Declension	13
Exercise VI.	14
" VII.	16
Third Declension	17
Exercise VIII.	23
" IX.	25
Fourth Declension	26
Exercise X.	27

Page.
Fifth Declension 28
Exercise XI. 29

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions 30
Exercise XII. 33
Third Declension 35
Exercise XIII. 37
Comparison of Adjectives 38
Exercise XIV. 39
Numeral Adjectives 40
Exercise XV. 42

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns 43
Possessive 44
Demonstrative 44
Relative 45
Interrogative 46
Indefinite 46
Exercise XVI. 47

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices 48
Moods 49
Tenses 50
Numbers 50
Persons 51
Conjugation 51
The Verb Sum 52
Exercise XVII. 56
" XVIII. 57
" XIX. 60
First Conjugation 62
Exercise XX. 66

Page.
Exercise XXI. 67
" XXII. 69
" XXIII. 71
" XXIV. 73
" XXV. 74
" XXVI. 75
" XXVII. 76
Second Conjugation 78
Exercise XXVIII. 82
" XXIX. 83
" XXX. 84
" XXXI. 85
" XXXII. 86
" XXXIII. 87
" XXXIV. 88
Third Conjugation 90
Exercise XXXV. 94
" XXXVI. 95
" XXXVII. 96
" XXXVIII. 97
" XXXIX. 97
" XL. 98
" XLI. 99
Fourth Conjugation 100
Exercise XLII. 104
" XLIII. 104
" XLIV. 105
" XLV. 106
" XLVI. 107
" XLVII. 107
" XLVIII. 108
Verbs in IO 110
Exercise XLIX. 112

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.
I. Classification of Sentences 114
II. Simple Sentences 115

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

Section.		Page.
I.	Agreement of Nouns	117
	Exercise L.	117
	" LI.	119
II.	Nominative	120
	Exercise LII.	120
III.	Vocative	121
	Exercise LIII.	121
IV.	Accusative	122
	Exercise LIV.	123
	" LV.	124
	" LVI.	125
V.	Dative	126
	Exercise LVII.	127
	" LVIII.	129
VI.	Genitive	130
	Exercise LIX.	131
	" LX.	132
VII.	Ablative	133
	Exercise LXI.	135
	" LXII.	137
	" LXIII.	138
	" LXIV.	140
VIII.	Cases with Prepositions	141
	Exercise LXV.	142
Suggestions to the Learner		143
Latin-English Vocabulary		147
English-Latin Vocabulary		157

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

THE numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl.	ablative.	n.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	nom.	nominative.
act.	active.	p.	page.
adv.	adverb.	part.	particle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person.
f.	feminine.	plur., *or* pl.	plural.
gen.	genitive.	prep.	preposition.
indef.	indefinite.	rel.	relative.
interrog.	interrogative.	sing.	singular.
m.	masculine.	voc.	vocative.

INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

1. Latin Grammar treats of the principles of the Latin language.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.[1]

ALPHABET.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. Classes of Letters. — Letters are divided into two classes: —

I. Vowels	a, e, i, o, u, y.
II. Consonants: —	
1. *Liquids*	l, m, n, r.
2. *Spirants*	h, f, v, j, s.
3. *Mutes:* 1) Labials — *lip-letters* . .	b, p, f, v.
2) Dentals — *teeth-letters* . .	d, t.
3) Gutturals — *throat-letters* .	c, g, k, q, h.
4. *Double Consonants*	x, z.

4. Combinations of Letters. — We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*, — combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*, — *x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *sd*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

[1] Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

5. Pronunciation. — Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.[1] For the convenience of the *instructor*, we add a brief outline of each.[2]

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. Sounds of the Vowels.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

7. Long Sounds. — Vowels have their long English sounds — **a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type* — in the following situations: —

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.[3]

3. In penultimate[4] syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *do-lo'-ris*, *a-gric'-o-la*.

1) A *unaccented* has the sound of *a final* in *America*: *men'-sa*.

8. Short Sounds. — Vowels have their short English sounds — **a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth* — in the following situations: —

---

[1] Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

[2] The pupil will, of course, study only the method adopted in the school.

[3] In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. For the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes: thus, *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

[4] Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys;* except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *dī'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-ĭ-nus*, *pat'-rī-bus*. But,

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

2. Sounds of the Diphthongs.

9. **Ae** like *e: Cae'-sar*, *Daed'-ă-lus*.[1]
Oe like *e: Oe'-ta*, *Oed'-ĭ-pus*.[1]
Au, as in author: *au'-rum*.
Eu . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.[2]

3. Sounds of the Consonants.

10. The consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C**, **G**, **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like s and j) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (se'do), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-pi*, *a'-ge* (a'-je), *a'-gi; ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in son, this: *sa'-cer*, *si'-dus*.

---

[1] The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to 7, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-ă-lus* (Ded'-a-lus) and *Oed'-ĭ-pus* (Ed'-i-pus), according to 8, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

[2] *Ei* and *ui*, when used as diphthongs, have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cui*.

1) *S final* after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in time: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound, like *ks*: *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor).

12. C, S, T, X, *aspirated.* — Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable, and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated; *c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um), *anx'-i-us*) ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on).

4. Syllables.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

Exercise I.

Pronounce the following words according to the English Method.

1. Men'-sam,[1] men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,[2] men-sa'-rum.[3] 2. Ho'-ram,[4] ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,[5] ho-ra'-rum.[6] 3. Scho'-la,[7] scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho-la'-rum. 4. Co-ro'-na,[7] co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.[8] 5. Ci'-vis,[9] civ'-i-um, civ'-i-bus. 6. Car'-men,[10] car'-mi-nis, car'-mi-ne.[11] 7. Rex,[12] re'-gis,[13] re'-gi, re'-gum.[13] 8. A'-ci-em,[14] a'-ci-e, a'-ci-es.[15]

---

[1] 8, 2; 8, 1.
[2] 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.
[3] 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.
[4] 7, 3; 8, 1.
[5] 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.
[6] 7, 3; 8, 1.
[7] 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).
[8] 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.
[9] 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.
[10] 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.
[11] 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.
[12] 11, 4.
[13] 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.
[14] 8, 3, 1); 12; 8, 1.
[15] 11, 2, 1).

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. Sounds of the Vowels.

15. The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.				SHORT.			
ā	like *a* in father:	*ā'-rīs.*		**ă**	like *a* in fast:	*ă'-mĕt.*
ē	*a* made:	*ē'-dī.*		**ĕ**	*e* net:	*rĕ'-gĕt.*
ī	*e* me:	*ī'-rī.*		**ĭ**	*i* divert:	*vĭ'-dĕt.*
ō	*o* rode:	*ō'-rās.*		**ŏ**	*o* romance:	*mŏ'-nĕt.*
ū	*o* do:	*ū'-nō.*		**ŭ**	*u* full:	*sŭ'-mŭs.*

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound: *sunt*, *u* as in *sŭ'-mŭs.*

4. **U.** — After *q*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *quī* (kwe), *lĭn'-guă* (lin'-gwa). So also in *cuī*, *huī*, *huīc*, and sometimes after *s*: *suā'-dĕ-o* (swa'-de-o).

2. Sounds of the Diphthongs.

16. In diphthongs, each vowel retains its own sound: —

ae (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (yes): *men'-sae.*[1]
au like *ow* in how: *cau'-să.*
oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in coin: *foe'-dŭs.*

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-tĕr.*

3. Sounds of the Consonants.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; but the following require special notice: —

c like *k* in king: *cē'-lēs* (kalas), *cī'-vī* (kewe).
g *g* get: *gĕ'-nŭs*, *rĕ'-gĭs.*
j *y* yet: *jă'-cĕt* (yaket), *jūs'-sŭm.*
s *s* son: *să'-cĕr*, *sŏ'-rŏr.*
t *t* time: *tĭ'-mŏr*, *tō'-tŭs.*
v *w* we: *vă'-dŭm*, *vī'-cī.*

[1] Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

4. Syllables.

18. In dividing words into syllables, make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-rē*, *persuā'-dē*, *men'-sae*.

Exercise II.

Pronounce the following Words according to the Roman Method.

1. Hō'-ră, hō'-răm, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rŭm. 2. Glō'-rĭ-ă, glō'-rĭ-ăm, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cī'-vĭ-ŭm, cī'-vĭ-būs.

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

Exercise III.

Pronounce the following Words according to the Continental Method.

1. Hō'-ră, hō'-răm, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rŭm. 2. Glō'-rĭ-ă, glō'-rĭ-ăm, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rŭm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vĭs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cī'-vĭ-ŭm, cī'-vĭ-bŭs.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.[1]

21. Long. — A syllable is long in quantity.

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

[1] Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. Short. — A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dĭ'-ēs*, *vĭ'-ae*, *nĭ'-hĭl*.[1]

23. Common. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally[2] short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *ă'-grī*.

1. The signs ¯, ˘, ˘̄, are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ā-gro-rŭm*.[3]

ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa*.

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented[4] on

---

[1] No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

[2] A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own *nature*; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

[3] By referring to 15 and 19, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (25). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in *rēx*, *ūrbs*, *ārs*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity; but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *ăvĕ*, *mārĕ*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 25), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7–12).

[4] In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

the *Penult*,[1] if that is long in quantity; otherwise on the *Antepenult*:[1] *hŏ-nō'-rĭs*, *con'-sŭ-lĭs*.

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent; on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mŏn'-u-ē'-runt*; *mŏn'-u-ĕ-rā'-mŭs*; *in-stau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

Exercise IV.

Accent and pronounce the following Words.[2]

1. Cōrōnă,[3] cōrōnae, cōrōnārŭm.[4] 2. Gemmae,[5] gemmăm, gemmārŭm. 3. Săpientiae,[6] ămīcĭtiae, justĭtiae, glōriae.[7] 4. Săpientiăm, ămīcĭtiăm, justĭtiăm, glōriăm. 5. Săpientiă, ămīcĭtiă, justĭtiă, glōriă.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

---

37. Etymology treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech[8] are: *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cĭcĕro*, Cicero; *Rōmă*, Rome; *dōmŭs*, house.

---

[1] Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

[2] According to the method adopted in the school.

[3] 25; 7, 4, 1). [5] 11, 1; 24. [7] 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

[4] 25, 4. [6] 25, 4; 8, 3, 1); 12.

[8] Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

1. A Proper Noun is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cĭcĕro*, *Rōmă*.

2. A Common Noun is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vĭr*, a man; *ĕquŭs*, horse.

40. Nouns have *Gender*, *Number*, *Person*, *and Case*.

I. Gender.

41. There are three genders:[1] *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. General Rules for Gender.

I. Masculines.

1. Names of *Males: Cĭcĕro; vĭr*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months: Rhēnŭs*, Rhine; *Nōtŭs*, south wind; *Martiŭs*, March.

II. Feminines.

1. Names of *Females: mŭlĭĕr*, woman; *leaenă*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees: Aegyptŭs*, Egypt; *Rōmă*, Rome; *Dēlŏs*, Delos; *pĭrŭs*, pear-tree.

II. Person and Number.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

---

[1] In English, *gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males;* feminine nouns, *females;* and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females;* while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

III. Cases.[1]

45. The Latin has six cases: —

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with *of*.
Dative,	Objective with *to* or *for*.
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*.

1. Oblique Cases. — The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. Locative. — The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. Stem and Endings. — The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base, called the stem.

1. Meaning. — Accordingly each case-form contains two distinct elements: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-īs*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *reg*; the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. Cases Alike. — But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative in neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).[2]

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

---

[1] The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

[2] And in some nouns of Greek origin.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS. — In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows: —

	STEM-ENDINGS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
DEC. I.	**a**	**ae**
II.	**o**	**ī**
III.	**i** *or* consonant.	**ĭs**
IV.	**u**	**ūs**
V.	**e**	**ēī**

FIRST DECLENSION. — A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and **ē**, *feminine;* **ās** and **ēs**, *masculine.*[1]

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows: —

	Example.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	mens**ă**,	*a table*,	ă
Gen.	mens**ae**,	*of a table*,	ae
Dat.	mens**ae**,	*to, for, a table*,	ae
Acc.	mens**ăm**,	*a table*,	ăm
Voc.	mens**ă**,	*O table*,	ă
Abl.	mens**ā**,	*with, from, by, a table*,	ā
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	mens**ae**,	*tables*,	ae
Gen.	mens**ārŭm**,	*of tables*,	ārŭm
Dat.	mens**īs**,	*to, for, tables*,	īs
Acc.	mens**ās**,	*tables*,	ās
Voc.	mens**ae**,	*O tables*,	ae
Abl.	mens**īs**,	*with, from, by, tables*,	īs.

1. STEM. — In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in **a**.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe,

1) That the stem is *mensa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.

---

[1] That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending **a**.

3. Examples for Practice. — Like *mensa* decline: —

Āla, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. Locative. — Names of towns, and a very few other words, have a Locative Singular in **ae**: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *mīlītiae*, in war.

Exercise V.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amīcītiă,	ae,[1] *f.*[2]	*friendship.*
Cŏrōnă,	ae, *f.*	*crown.*
Gemmă,	ae, *f.*	*gem.*
Glōriă,	ae, *f.*	*glory.*
Hōră,	ae, *f.*	*hour.*
Justītiă,	ae, *f.*	*justice.*
Săpientiă,	ae, *f.*	*wisdom.*
Schōlă,	ae, *f.*	*school.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Corōnă,[3] corōnā, corōnae,[4] corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmā, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Sapientiă, amicitiă, justitiă, gloriă. 4. Sapientiam, amicitiam, justitiam, gloriam. 5. Sapientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, gloriā. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

---

[1] The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

[2] Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

[3] As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

[4] When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of[1] friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a[2] crown, of a gem. 11. With the[2] crowns, with the gems.

SECOND DECLENSION. — O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

ĕr, ĭr, ŭs, and **os,** *masculine;* **ŭm,** and **on,** *neuter.*

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um*, are declined as follows: —

Servus, *slave.* Puer, *boy.* Ager, *field.* Templum, *temple.*

	SINGULAR.			
N.	servŭs	puĕr	ăgĕr	templŭm
G.	servī	puĕrī	ăgrī	templī
D.	servō	puĕrō	agrō	templō
A.	servŭm	puĕrŭm	agrŭm	templŭm
V.	servĕ	puĕr	agĕr	templŭm
A.	servō	puĕrō	agrō	templō
	PLURAL.			
N.	servī	puĕrī	ăgrī	templă
G.	servōrŭm	puĕrōrŭm	agrōrŭm	templōrŭm
D.	servīs	puĕrīs	agrīs	templīs
A.	servōs	puĕrōs	agrōs	templă
V.	servī	puĕrī	agrī	templă
A.	servīs.	puĕrīs.	agrīs.	templīs.

1. Stem. — In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in **o.**

2. In the Paradigms, observe,

[1] The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of*, *to*, *by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, amicitia; *of friendship*, amicitiae.

[2] The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown*, *a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

1) That the stems are *servo*, *pŭcro*; *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the stem-ending **o** becomes **u** in the endings *us* and *um*.

3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending **o**, are as follows: —

	SINGULAR.	
	Masc.	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūs[1]	ŭm
Gen.	ī	ī
Dat.	ō	ō
Acc.	ŭm	ŭm
Voc.	ĕ[1]	ŭm
Abl.	ō	ō
	PLURAL.	
Nom.	ī	ă
Gen.	ōrŭm	ōrŭm
Dat.	īs	īs
Acc.	ōs	ă
Voc.	ī	ă
Abl.	īs.	īs.

3. Examples for Practice. — Like SERVUS: *dŏmĭnus*, master. Like PUER: *gĕner*, son-in-law. Like AGER: *măgister*, master. Like TEMPLUM: *bellum*, war.

6. Locative. — Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in ī: *Cŏrinthi*, at Corinth; *hŭmi*, on the ground.

Exercise VI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dōnŭm, ī, *n.*	*gift.*
Gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, *m.*	*son-in-law.*
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrī, *m.*	*book.*
Ocŭlūs, ī, *m.*	*eye.*
Praeceptūm, ī, *n.*	*rule, precept.*
Sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, *m.*	*father-in-law.*
Tўrannūs, ī, *m.*	*tyrant.*
Verbŭm, ī, *n.*	*word.*

[1] The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in *er*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Oculus, oculi, oculo, oculum, oculc, oculōrum, oculis, oculos. 2. Socer, socĕri, socĕro, socĕrum, socerōrum, socĕris, socĕros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Puĕri, genĕri. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Pucrum, genĕrum. 9. Agrōrum, librōrum. 10. Templa, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Genĕri, generōrum. 13. Agri, agrōrum. 14. Dono, donis. 15. Verbi, praecepti.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves. 3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts.

SECOND DECLENSION. — Continued.

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:[1]

Cluilius rex mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies.* — Liv. Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* — Cic.

I. Directions for Parsing.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline[2] it.

[1] A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive;* as, *Cluilius rex,* Cluilius the king. Here *rex,* the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius, — *Cluilius the king.* The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

[2] Adjectives should also be compared (162).

3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,[1] and the Rule for it.

MODEL.

Artĕmīsiă rēgīnă, *Artemisia the queen.*

Regīna is a noun (39) of the First Declension (48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *regīna* (48, 1). Singular: *regīna, regīnae, regīnae, regīnam, regīnă, regīnā.* Plural: *regīnae, regīnārum, regīnis, regīnas, regīnae, regīnis.* It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 42, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia,* with which it agrees in *case*, according to Rule II.: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

EXERCISE VII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cāiŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*Caius*, a proper name.
Fīliă, ae, *f.*	*daughter.*
Hastă, ae, *f.*	*spear.*
Pīsistrātŭs, ī, *m.*	*Pisistratus*, Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmŭs, ī, *m.*	*branch.*
Rēgīnă, ae, *f.*	*queen.*
Tullĭă, ae, *f.*	*Tullia*, a proper name.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Ramus, hastă. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae. 4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum. 7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum. 10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis. 12. Templum, templa. 13. Templi, templōrum. 14. Pisistrătus tyrannus.[2] 15. Pisistrāti tyranni. 16. Pisistrāto tyranno. 17. Tullĭă fĭlĭă. 18. Tulliae filiae.

---

[1] By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regīna*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia.*

[2] *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns. 3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns. 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns. 7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books. 9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen. 11. Caius the slave. 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes: —

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.

CLASS I. — CONSONANT STEMS.

57. Stems ending in a Labial: **B** or **P**.

Princeps, M.,[1]	*a leader, chief.*	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.	
N. princep**s,**	*a leader,*	s
G. princip**is,**	*of a leader,*	ĭs
D. princip**ī,**	*to, for, a leader,*	ī
A. princip**ĕm,**	*a leader,*	ĕm
V. princep**s,**	*O leader,*	s
A. princip**ĕ,**	*with, from, by, a leader,*	ĕ
	PLURAL.	
N. princip**ēs,**	*leaders,*	ēs
G. princip**ŭm,**	*of leaders,*	ūm
D. princip**ĭbŭs,**	*to, for, leaders,*	ĭbŭs
A. princip**ēs,**	*leaders,*	ēs
V. princip**ēs,**	*O leaders,*	ēs
A. princip**ĭbŭs,**	*with, from, by, leaders,*	ĭbŭs.

[1] M stands for *masculine*, F for *feminine*, and N for *neuter*.

1. Stem and Case-Endings. — In this Paradigm observe that the stem is *princēp*, modified before an additional syllable to *princīp*, and that the case-endings are appended to the stem without change.

2. Variable Radical Vowel. — In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short **e** or **i** generally takes the form of **ĕ** in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and that of **ĭ** in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*, *princĭpis*, and *jūdex*, *jūdĭcis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps*, the original form of the radical vowel is **e**, and in *jūdex* **i**.

58. Stems ending in a Dental: **D** or **T**.

Lapis, m., *stone.*	Aetas, f., *age.*	Miles, m., *soldier.*
	SINGULAR.	
N. lāpĭs	aetās	mīlĕs
G. lapĭdĭs	aetātĭs	militĭs
D. lapĭdī	aetātī	militī
A. lapĭdĕm	aetātĕm	militĕm
V. lapĭs	aetās	milĕs
A. lapĭdĕ	aetātĕ	militĕ
	PLURAL.	
N. lapĭdēs	aetātēs	militēs
G. lapĭdŭm	aetātŭm	militŭm
D. lapidĭbŭs	aetatĭbŭs	militĭbŭs
A. lapĭdēs	aetātēs	militēs
V. lapĭdēs	aetātēs	militēs
A. lapidĭbŭs.	aetatĭbŭs.	militĭbŭs.

Nepos, m., *grandson.*	Virtus, f., *virtue.*	Caput, n., *head.*
	SINGULAR.	
N. nĕpōs	virtūs	cāpūt
G. nepōtĭs	virtūtĭs	capĭtĭs
D. nepōtī	virtūtī	capĭtī
A. nepōtĕm	virtūtĕm	capūt
V. nepōs	virtūs	capūt
A. nepōtĕ	virtūtĕ	capĭtĕ

	PLURAL.	
N. nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capītă
G. nepōtŭm	virtūtŭm	capītŭm
D. nepotĭbŭs	virtutĭbŭs	capitĭbŭs
A. nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capītă
V. nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capītă
A. nepotĭbŭs.	virtutĭbŭs.	capitĭbŭs.

1. Stems and Case-Endings. — In these Paradigms observe,

1) That the stems are *lāpĭd*, *aetāt*, *mīlĭt*, *nēpōt*, *virtūt*, and *căpŭt*.

2) That *mīlĕs* has a variable vowel, ĕ, ĭ, and *căpŭt*, ŭ, ī.

3) That the dental d or t is dropped before s: *lāpis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetats*, *mīlēs* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtuts*.

4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter*, *căpŭt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.

5) That *căpŭt* has no case-ending in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing., but has ă in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur.

59. Stems ending in a Guttural: C or G.

Rex, m., *king.*	Judex, m. & f., *judge.*	Radix, f., *root.*	Dux, m. & f., *leader.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. rex	jūdex	rādix	dux
G. rēgĭs	judicĭs	radicĭs	dūcĭs
D. regī	judicī	radicī	ducī
A. regĕm	judicĕm	radicĕm	ducĕm
V. rex	judex	radix	dux
A. regĕ	judicĕ	radicĕ	ducĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
G. regŭm	judicŭm	radicŭm	ducŭm
D. regĭbŭs	judicĭbŭs	radicĭbŭs	ducĭbŭs
A. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
V. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
A. regĭbŭs.	judicĭbŭs.	radicĭbŭs.	ducĭbŭs.

1. Stems and Case-Endings. — In the Paradigms, observe,

1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdic*, *rādic*, and *dūc* — *jūdic* with the variable vowel — ĭ, ĕ. See 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That **s** in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem, and forms *x*.

60. Stems ending in a Liquid: **L, M, N,** or **R.**

	Sol, M., *sun.*	Consul, M., *consul.*	Passer, M., *sparrow.*	Pater, M., *father.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.	sōl	consŭl	passĕr	pătĕr
G.	sol**ĭs**	consŭl**ĭs**	passĕr**ĭs**	pătr**ĭs**
D.	solī	consŭlī	passĕrī	patrī
A.	sol**ĕm**	consŭl**ĕm**	passĕr**ĕm**	patr**ĕm**
V.	sōl	consŭl	passĕr	patĕr
A.	solĕ	consŭlĕ	passĕrĕ	patrĕ
		PLURAL.		
N.	sol**ēs**	consŭl**ēs**	passĕr**ēs**	patr**ēs**
G.		consŭl**ŭm**	passĕr**ŭm**	patr**ŭm**
D.	sol**ĭbŭs**	consul**ĭbŭs**	passer**ĭbŭs**	patr**ĭbŭs**
A.	sol**ēs**	consŭl**ēs**	passĕr**ēs**	patr**ēs**
V.	sol**ēs**	consŭl**ēs**	passĕr**ēs**	patr**ēs**
A.	sol**ĭbŭs.**	consul**ĭbŭs.**	passer**ĭbŭs.**	patr**ĭbŭs.**

	Pastor, M., *shepherd.*	Leo, M., *lion.*	Virgo, F., *maiden.*	Carmen, N., *song.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.	pastŏr	leo	virgo	carmĕn
G.	pastōr**ĭs**	leōn**ĭs**	virgĭn**ĭs**	carmĭn**ĭs**
D.	pastōrī	leōnī	virgĭnī	carmĭnī
A.	pastōr**ĕm**	leōn**ĕm**	virgĭn**ĕm**	carmĕn
V.	pastŏr	leo	virgo	carmĕn
A.	pastōrĕ	leōnĕ	virgĭnĕ	carmĭnĕ
		PLURAL.		
N.	pastōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	carmĭn**ă**
G.	pastōr**ŭm**	leōn**ŭm**	virgĭn**ŭm**	carmĭn**ŭm**
D.	pastor**ĭbŭs**	leon**ĭbŭs**	virgin**ĭbŭs**	carmin**ĭbŭs**
A.	pastōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	carmĭn**ă**
V.	pastōr**ēs**	leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	carmĭn**ă**
A.	pastor**ĭbŭs.**	leon**ĭbŭs.**	virgin**ĭbŭs.**	carmin**ĭbŭs.**

1. Stems and Case-Endings. — In the Paradigms, observe,

1) That the stems are *sōl*, *consŭl*, *passĕr*, *pătĕr*, *pastōr*, *leōn*, *virgŏn*, and *carmĕn*.

2) That *virgo* has the variable vowel, **ŏ, ĭ**; and *carmĕn*, **ĕ, ĭ.**

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. **s**, the usual case-ending for masculine and feminine nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastōr* shortens **o**, while *leōn* and *virgŏn* drop **n**.

61. Stems ending in **S**.

Flos, M., *flower.*	Jus, N., *right.*	Opus, N., *work.*	Corpus, N., *body.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. flōs	jūs	ŏpūs	corpŭs
G. flōr**ĭs**	jūr**ĭs**	opĕr**ĭs**	corpŏr**ĭs**
D. florī	jurī	opĕrī	corpŏrī
A. flor**ĕm**	jus	opūs	corpŭs
V. flos	jus	opūs	corpŭs
A. florĕ	jurĕ	opĕrĕ	corpŏrĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. flor**ēs**	jur**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**
G. flor**ŭm**	jur**ŭm**	opĕr**ŭm**	corpŏr**ŭm**
D. flor**ĭbŭs**	jur**ĭbŭs**	oper**ĭbŭs**	corpor**ĭbŭs**
A. flor**ēs**	jur**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**
V. flor**ēs**	jur**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**
A. flor**ĭbŭs.**	jur**ĭbŭs.**	oper**ĭbŭs.**	corpor**ĭbŭs.**

1. Stems and Case-Endings. — In the Paradigms observe,

1) That the stems are *flōs-*, *jūs-*, *ŏpĕs-*, and *corpŏs-*.

2) That *ŏpūs* has the variable vowel, **ĕ**, **ŭ**, and *corpŭs*, **ŏ**, **ŭ**.

3) That **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*).

4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 3).

RULE XVI. — Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :[1]

Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* — Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy.* — Liv. Mors Hămilcăris, *the death of Hamilcar.* — Liv.

[1] The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cătōnĭs ōrātiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

Catōnis is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (39, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant (56, I.): STEM, *Catōn:* Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped). Singular:[1] *Cato*, *Catōnis*, *Catōni*, *Catōnem*, *Cato*, *Catōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 42, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *orātiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

Exercise VIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cĭcĕrō, Cĭcĕrōnĭs, *m.*	*Cicero*, the Roman orator.
Consŭl, consŭlĭs, *m.*	*consul.*[2]
Exsŭl, exsŭlĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*exile.*
Frāter, frātrĭs, *m.*	*brother.*
Lex, lēgĭs, *f.*	*law.*
Nōmĕn, nōmĭnĭs, *n.*	*name.*
Orātiō, ōrātiōnĭs, *f.*	*oration*, *speech.*
Orātŏr, ōrātōrĭs, *m.*	*orator.*
Victŏr, victōrĭs, *m.*	*victor*, *conqueror.*

---

another noun: *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king; *Catōnis orationes*, Cato's orations, *or* the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of Cluilius, by showing *what* Cluilius is meant, — *Cluilius the king:* in a similar manner, the Genitive *Catōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *orationes*, by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato.* Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *orationes* and the Genitive *Catōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

[1] As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

[2] The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Princĭpis, princĭpum. 2. Princĭpem, princĭpes. 3. Miles, milĭtes. 4. Milĭti, militĭbus. 5. Caput, capĭta. 6. Capĭte, capitĭbus. 7. Rex, reges. 8. Regis, regum. 9. Consŭli, consulĭbus. 10. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 11. Virgo, virgĭnis, virgĭnes. 12. Solis, solem, soles. 13. Solĭbus, consulĭbus. 14. Patri, pastōri. 15. Patres, pastōres. 16. Carmen, carmĭna. 17. Opĕris, corpŏris. 18. Cicerōnis[1] oratio. 19. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 20. Oratiōne consŭlis.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs, names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To the father, to the brother. 13. Kings, laws. 14. Of the king, of the law. 15. Of the kings, of the laws. 16. For the conqueror, of the conqueror. 17. The brother of the conqueror.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — I STEMS.

62. Stems ending in **I.** — *Nouns in* **ĭs**, — *Abl. Sing. in* **ī**, *or in* **ī** *or* **ĕ**.

Tussis, F., *cough.*	Turris, F., *tower.*	Ignis, M., *fire.*	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.		
N. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	ĭs
G. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	ĭs
D. tussī	turrī	ignī	ī
A. tussĭm	turrĭm, ĕm	ignĕm	ĭm, ĕm
V. tussĭs	turrĭs	ignĭs	ĭs
A. tussī	turrī, ĕ	ignī, ĕ	ī, ĕ

[1] *Cicerōnis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *oratio*, according to Rule XVI., 395.

		PLURAL.		
N.	tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	ēs
G.	tussĭŭm	turrĭŭm	ignĭŭm	ĭŭm
D.	tussĭbŭs	turrĭbŭs	ignĭbŭs	ĭbūs
A.	tussēs, īs	turrēs, īs	ignēs, īs	ēs, īs
V.	tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	ēs
A.	tussĭbŭs.	turrĭbŭs.	ignĭbŭs.	ĭbūs.

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

1) That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.

2) That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending i, which disappears in certain cases.

3) That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Accusative and Ablative Singular.

63. STEMS ENDING IN I. — *Neuters in* ĕ, al, *and* ar.

Mare, *sea.*	Anĭmal, *animal.*	Calcar, *spur.*	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.		
N. mărĕ	ănĭmăl	calcăr	ĕ — [1]
G. marĭs	animālĭs	calcārĭs	ĭs
D. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
A. marĕ	anĭmăl	calcăr	ĕ — [1]
V. marĕ	anĭmăl	calcăr	ĕ — [1]
A. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
	PLURAL.		
N. mariă	animaliă	calcariă	iă
G. mariŭm	animaliŭm	calcariŭm	iŭm
D. marĭbŭs	animalĭbŭs	calcarĭbŭs	ĭbūs
A. mariă	animaliă	calcariă	iă
V. mariă	animaliă	calcariă	iă
A. marĭbŭs.	animalĭbŭs.	calcarĭbŭs.	ĭbūs.

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe,

1) That the stem-ending i is changed to e in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *māre*, and dropped in the same cases of *ănĭmăl* (for *animāle*) and *calcăr* (for *calcāre*).

2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending i.

[1] The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **I.** — *Nouns in* **ĭs, es,** *and* **s (x)** *preceded by a Consonant,* — *Abl. Sing. in* **ĕ.**

	Hostis, M. & F., *enemy.*	Nubes, F., *cloud.*	Urbs, F., *city.*	Arx, F., *citadel.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.	host**ĭs**	nūb**ēs**	urb**s**	arx[1]
G.	host**ĭs**	nub**ĭs**	urb**ĭs**	arc**ĭs**
D.	host**ī**	nub**ī**	urb**ī**	arc**ī**
A.	host**ĕm**	nub**ĕm**	urb**ĕm**	arc**ĕm**
V.	host**ĭs**	nub**ēs**	urb**s**	arx
A.	host**ĕ**	nub**ĕ**	urb**ĕ**	arc**ĕ**
		PLURAL.		
N.	host**ēs**	nub**ēs**	urb**ēs**	arc**ēs**
G.	host**ĭŭm**	nub**ĭŭm**	urb**ĭŭm**	arc**ĭŭm**
D.	host**ĭbŭs**	nub**ĭbŭs**	urb**ĭbŭs**	arc**ĭbŭs**
A.	host**ēs, īs**	nub**ēs, īs**	urb**ēs, īs**	arc**ēs, īs**
V.	host**ēs**	nub**ēs**	urb**ēs**	arc**ēs**
A.	host**ĭbŭs.**	nub**ĭbŭs.**	urb**ĭbŭs.**	arc**ĭbŭs.**

1. STEMS. — These Paradigms show a combination of i-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host; urbi, urb: arci, arc.* The stem of *nūbēs* seems to be *nūbēs, nūbi, nūb.*

67. CASE-ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

	Consonant Stems.		I-Stems.	
	Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. & Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	s — [2]	— [2]	ĭs, ēs, s	ĕ — [2]
G.	ĭs	ĭs	ĭs	ĭs
D.	ī	ī	ī	ī
A.	ĕm	—	ĭm, ĕm	ĕ —
V.	s	—	ĭs, ēs, s	ĕ —
A.	ĕ	ĕ	ī, ĕ	ī

[1] *X* in *arx* = *cs*, — *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nominative ending.

[2] The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

		PLURAL.	
N. ēs	ă	ēs	iă
G. ŭm	ŭm	iŭm	iŭm
D. ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs
A. ēs	ă	ēs, īs	iă
V. ēs	ă	ēs	iă
A. ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

99. Nouns of the third declension in

o, or, os, er, and **es** *increasing in the genitive*,[1]

are masculine: *sermo*, discourse; *dŏlŏr*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *aggĕr*, mound; *pĕs*, genitive *pĕdis*, foot.

105. Nouns of the third declension in

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive, and* **s** *preceded by a consonant*,

are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvīs*, ship; *chlămўs*, cloak; *pax*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

111. Nouns of the third declension in

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and **us,**

are neuter: *poēmă*, poem; *mărĕ*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *ănĭmăl*, animal; *carmĕn*, song; *căpŭt*, head; *corpŭs*, body.

RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.[2]

Ad ămīcum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* — Cic. In cūri-

[1] That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

[2] The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italiā esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable, at this early stage of the course, to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

am, *into the senate-house.* — Liv. In Itāliā,[1] *in Italy.* — Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad āmīcŭm, *To a friend.*

Amīcum is a noun of the Second Declension (51), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *amīco* (51, 1). Singular: *amīcus*, *amici*, *amīco*, *amīcum*, *amice*, *amīco*. Plural: *amīci*, *amicōrum*, *amīcis*, *amīcos*, *amīci*, *amīcis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 51, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

Exercise IX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ad, *prep. with acc.*	*to, towards.*
Avis, āvis, *f.*	*bird.*
Cīvis, cīvis, *m. and f.*	*citizen.*
Cīvitās, cīvitātis, *f.*	*state.*
Contrā, *prep. with acc.*	*against, contrary to.*
Mors, mortis, *f.*	*death.*
Pax, pācis, *f.*	*peace.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Nubis, nubium. 2. Nubem, nubes. 3. Avis, aves. 4. Avi, avĭbus. 5. Urbs, urbes. 6. Urbi, urbĭbus. 7. Nubēs, milĕs. 8. Nubis, milĭtis. 9. Nubem, milĭtem. 10. Rex, judex. 11. Regis, judĭcis. 12. Reges, judĭces. 13. Civĭtas, civitātes. 14. Virtus, virtūtes. 15. Mors regis. 16. Morte regis. 17. Mortes regum. 18. Virtus judĭcis. 19. Pacis gloriā. 20. Ad gloriam.[2] 21. Contra regem. 22. Ad turrim. 23. Contra hostes.

---

[1] Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*, though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and with the Ablative when it means *in*.

[2] The Accusative *gloriam* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens. 2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds. 3. A king, a law. 4. Of fire, with fire. 5. Of the animal, for the animals. 6. The law of the state. 7. The laws of the state. 8. Contrary to[1] the law. 9. Contrary to the laws of the state. 10. By the death of the conqueror.

FOURTH DECLENSION. — U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

ŭs, — *masculine;* **ū**, — *neuter.*

They are declined as follows: —

Fructus, *fruit.*	Cornu, *horn.*	Case-Endings.	
	SINGULAR.		
N. fructŭs	cornū	ūs	ū
G. fructūs	cornūs	ūs	ūs
D. fructuī	cornū	uī	ū
A. fructŭm	cornū	ŭm	ū
V. fructŭs	cornū	ŭs	ū
A. fructū	cornū	ū	ū
	PLURAL.		
N. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
G. fructuŭm	cornuŭm	uŭm	uūm
D. fructĭbŭs	cornĭbŭs	ĭbūs (ŭbūs)	ĭbūs (ŭbūs)
A. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
V. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
A. fructĭbŭs.	cornĭbŭs.	ĭbūs (ŭbūs).	ĭbūs (ŭbūs).

1. Stem. — In nouns of the fourth declension the stem ends in ŭ: *fructŭ*, *cornŭ*.

2. Case-Endings. — The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending ŭ, weakened to ĭ in *ĭbūs*, but retained in *ŭbūs*.

[1] See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

Exercise X.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Adventŭs, ūs, *m.*	*arrival, approach.*
Antĕ, *prep. with acc.*	*before.*
Caesăr, Caesārĭs, *m.*	*Caesar*, a Roman surname.
Cantŭs, ūs, *m.*	*singing, song.*
Conspectŭs, ūs, *m.*	*sight, presence.*
Exercĭtŭs, ūs, *m.*	*army.*
Hostĭs, hostĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*enemy.*
Impĕtŭs, ūs, *m.*	*attack.*
In, *prep.*	*into* with acc., *in* with abl.
Luscĭnĭă, ae, *f.*	*nightingale.*
Occāsŭs, ūs, *m.*	*the setting*, as of the sun.
Post, *prep. with acc.*	*after.*
Ver, vēris, *n.*	*spring.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructĭbus, cantĭbus. 3. Cantus lusciniae.[1] 4. Cantu lusciniae. 5. Cantĭbus luscĭnĭārum. 6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum[2] veris.[1] 8. Solis occāsus. 9. Post solis occāsum. 10. Caesāris adventu. 11. Ante adventum Caesāris. 12. Impĕtus hostium. 13. Impĕtu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercĭtus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After[3]

[1] Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 21.

[2] Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 26.

[3] See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 26. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to, for, with, from, by,* are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with, from, by*. Other English prepositions, *before, after, behind, between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the nightingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy. 11. In[1] the city, into[1] the city, for the city. 12. In sight of the king. 13. By the orations of Cicero. 14. Before the death of the king. 15. After the death of Cicero, the consul.

FIFTH DECLENSION. — E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**, — *feminine*, and are declined as follows: [2] —

Dies, *day*.[3]	Res, *thing*.	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.	
N. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
G. di**ēī**	r**ĕī**	eī
D. di**ēī**	r**ĕī**	eī
A. di**ĕm**	r**ĕm**	ĕm
V. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
A. di**ē**	r**ē**	ē
	PLURAL.	
N. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
G. di**ērŭm**	r**ērŭm**	ērŭm
D. di**ēbŭs**	r**ēbŭs**	ēbŭs
A. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
V. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
A. di**ēbŭs.**	r**ēbŭs.**	ēbŭs.

1. Stem. — The stem of nouns of the fifth declension ends in ē: *die*, *re*.

2. Case-Endings. — The case-endings here given contain the stem ending ē, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened

---

[1] See page 27, foot-note 1.

[2] But nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural; and many admit no plural whatever.

[3] *Dies*, day, is an exception in gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

(1) in the ending *eī*,[1] when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *ĕm*.

Exercise XI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aciēs, ăciēī, *f.*	*battle-array, army.*
Amīcūs, ī, *m.*	*friend.*
Cĭbūs, ī, *m.*	*food.*
Dē, *prep. with abl.*	*concerning.*
Diēs, diēī, *m. and f.*	*day.*
Făciēs, făciēī, *f.*	*face, appearance.*
Nŭmĕrŭs, ī, *m.*	*number, quantity.*
Rēs, rēī, *f.*	*thing, affair.*
Spĕciēs, spĕciēī, *f.*	*appearance.*
Spēs, spēī, *f.*	*hope.*
Victōriă, ae, *f.*	*victory.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Diēi, diērum, diēbus. 2. Aciēi, aciem, acie. 3. Diem, speciem. 4. Die, specie. 5. Res, spes. 6. Rei, spei. 7. Victoriae spes. 8. Victoriae spe. 9. Diēi horae. 10. Numĕrus diērum. 11. Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies. 12. Gloriae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēi. 13. Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem. 14. De victoria, in mare, ad consŭlem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

[1] The learner will notice that *e* in the ending *eī* is long in *diēī*, where it is preceded by a vowel, but short in *rĕī*, where it is preceded by a consonant. In both instances, however, the *e* belongs to the stem.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bŏnus*, good: *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bŏnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension, and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. A AND O STEMS.

148. Bŏnus, *good*.

	SINGULAR.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bŏn**ŭs**	bŏn**ă**	bŏn**ŭm**
Gen.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dat.	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Acc.	bon**ŭm**	bon**ăm**	bon**ŭm**
Voc.	bon**ĕ**	bon**ă**	bon**ŭm**
Abl.	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**;
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ă**
Gen.	bon**ōrŭm**	bon**ārŭm**	bon**ōrŭm**
Dat	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Acc.	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**ă**
Voc.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ă**
Abl.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs.**

1. Bonus is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the Neut. like *templum*

of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bŏno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bŏna* in the Fem.

149. Līber, *free*.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	līb**ĕr**	līb**ĕră**	līb**ĕrŭm**
Gen.	libĕr**ī**	libĕr**ae**	libĕr**ī**
Dat.	libĕr**ō**	libĕr**ae**	libĕr**ō**
Acc.	libĕr**ŭm**	libĕr**ăm**	libĕr**ŭm**
Voc.	lib**ĕr**	libĕr**ă**	libĕr**ŭm**
Abl.	libĕr**ō**	libĕr**ā**	libĕr**ō**;

PLURAL.

Nom.	libĕr**ī**	libĕr**ae**	libĕr**ă**
Gen.	liber**ōrŭm**	liber**ārŭm**	liber**ōrŭm**
Dat.	libĕr**īs**	libĕr**īs**	libĕr**īs**
Acc.	libĕr**ōs**	libĕr**ās**	libĕr**ă**
Voc.	libĕr**ī**	libĕr**ae**	libĕr**ă**
Abl.	libĕr**īs**	libĕr**īs**	libĕr**īs**.

1. LIBER is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bŏnus*.

150. Aeger, *sick*.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	aegĕr	aegr**ă**	aegr**ŭm**
Gen.	aegr**ī**	aegr**ae**	aegr**ī**
Dat.	aegr**ō**	aegr**ae**	aegr**ō**
Acc.	aegr**ŭm**	aegr**ăm**	aegr**ŭm**
Voc.	aeger	aegr**ă**	aegr**ŭm**
Abl.	aegr**ō**	aegr**ā**	aegr**ō**;

PLURAL.

Nom.	aegr**ī**	aegr**ae**	aegr**ă**
Gen.	aegr**ōrŭm**	aegr**ārŭm**	aegr**ōrŭm**
Dat.	aegr**īs**	aegr**īs**	aegr**īs**
Acc.	aegr**ōs**	aegr**ās**	aegr**ă**
Voc.	aegr**ī**	aegr**ae**	aegr**ă**
Abl.	aegr**īs**	aegr**īs**	aegr**īs**.

1. AEGER is declined in the Masc. like *āger* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

RULE XXXIII. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.*[1] — Cic. Vērae āmīcitiae, *true friendships.* — Cic. Māgister optimus, *the best teacher.* — Cic.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Vērae āmīcitiae, *True friendships.*

Verae is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *vera* (148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum:* G. *veri, verae, veri:* D. *vero, verae, vero:* A. *verum, veram, verum;* V. *vere, verā, verum:* A. *vero, verā, vero.* Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera:* G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum:* D. *veris, veris, veris:* A. *veros, veras, vera:* V. *veri, verae, vera:* A. *veris, veris, veris.* It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

EXERCISE XII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Annŭlŭs, ī, *m.*	*ring.*
Aureŭs, ă, ŭm,[2]	*golden.*
Beātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*happy, blessed.*
Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*good.*
Ēgrĕgiŭs, ă, ŭm,	*distinguished.*
Fīdŭs, ă, ŭm,	*faithful.*
Grātŭs, ă. ŭm,	*acceptable, pleasing.*
Magnŭs, ă. ŭm.	*great.*

[1] Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like BONUS: *caecus, caeca, caecum.*

[2] The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

Multŭs, ă, ŭm,	*much, many.*
Puellă, ae, *f.*	*girl.*
Pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm,	*beautiful.*
Rēgīnă, ae, *f.*	*queen.*
Rēgnŭm, ī, *n.*	*kingdom.*
Vērŭs, ă, ŭm,	*true.*
Vītă, ae, *f.*	*life.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amīcus fidus.[1] 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amicōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amīcos fidos. 9. Corōnā aureā. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnā aureā. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellă pulchrā. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beātā vitā. 29. Aureus annŭlus. 30. Aurei annŭli. 31. Magnā gloriă. 32. Egregiă victoriă.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true[2] friend. 2. The true[2] friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable

[1] In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

[2] Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes: —

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms; the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, the same for all genders.

153. Adjectives of Three Endings in this declension have the stem in **i**, and are declined as follows: —

Acer, *sharp.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ācĕr	ācr**ĭs**	ācr**ĕ**
Gen.	acr**ĭs**	acr**ĭs**	acr**ĭs**
Dat.	acr**ī**	acr**ī**	acr**ī**
Acc.	acr**ĕm**	acr**ĕm**	acr**ĕ**
Voc.	acĕr	acr**ĭs**	acr**ĕ**
Abl.	acr**ī**	acr**ī**	acr**ī**;

PLURAL.

Nom.	acr**ēs**	acr**ēs**	acr**ĭă**
Gen.	acr**ĭŭm**	acr**ĭŭm**	acr**ĭŭm**
Dat.	acr**ĭbŭs**	acr**ĭbŭs**	acr**ĭbŭs**
Acc.	acr**ēs, īs**	acr**ēs, īs**	acr**ĭă**
Voc.	acr**ēs**	acr**ēs**	acr**ĭă**
Abl.	acr**ĭbŭs**	acr**ĭbŭs**	acr**ĭbŭs.**

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows: —

	Tristis, *sad.*		Tristior, *more sad.*	
		SINGULAR.		
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N.	tristĭs	tristĕ	tristiōr	tristiŭs
G.	tristĭs	tristĭs	tristiōrĭs	tristiōrĭs
D.	tristī	tristī	tristiōrī	tristiōrī
A.	tristĕm	tristĕ	tristiōrĕm	tristiŭs
V.	tristĭs	tristĕ	tristiōr	tristiŭs
A.	tristī	tristī;	tristiōrĕ (ī)	tristiōrĕ (ī);
		PLURAL.		
N.	tristēs	tristiă	tristiōrēs	tristiōră
G.	tristĭŭm	tristĭŭm	tristiōrŭm	tristiōrŭm
D.	tristĭbŭs	tristĭbŭs	tristiorĭbŭs	tristiorĭbŭs
A.	tristēs, īs	tristiă	tristiōrēs	tristiōră
V.	tristēs	tristiă	tristiōrēs	tristiōră
A.	tristĭbŭs	tristĭbŭs.	tristiorĭbŭs	tristiorĭbŭs.

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined, in the main, like nouns of the same endings.

156. Audax, *audacious.* Fēlix, *happy.*

		SINGULAR.		
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N.	audax	audax	fēlix	fēlix
G.	audācĭs	audācĭs	felicĭs	felicĭs
D.	audācī	audācī	felīcī	felīcī
A.	audācĕm	audax	felīcĕm	felix
V.	audax	audax	felix	felix
A.	audācī (ĕ)	audācī (ĕ);	felīcī (ĕ)	felīcī (ĕ);
		PLURAL.		
N.	audācēs	audaciă	felīcēs	feliciă
G.	audaciŭm	audaciŭm	feliciŭm	feliciŭm
D.	audacĭbŭs	audacĭbŭs	felicĭbŭs	felicĭbŭs
A.	audācēs (īs)	audaciă	felīcēs (īs)	feliciă
V.	audācēs	audaciă	felīcēs	feliciă
A.	audacĭbŭs	audacĭbŭs.	felicĭbŭs	felicĭbŭs.

157. Amans, *loving.* Prūdens, *prudent.*

SINGULAR.

	M. and F.	*Neut.*		*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N.	ămans	ămans	*N.*	prūdens	prūdens
G.	amantĭs	amantĭs	*G.*	prudentĭs	prudentĭs
D.	amantī	amantī	*D.*	prudentī	prudentī
A.	amantĕm	amans	*A.*	prudentĕm	prudens
V.	amans	amans	*V.*	prudens	prudens
A.	amantĕ (ī)	amantĕ (ī);	*A.*	prudentī (ĕ)	prudentī (ĕ);

PLURAL.

N.	amantēs	amantiă	*N.*	prudentēs	prudentiă
G.	amantiŭm	amantiŭm	*G.*	prudentiŭm	prudentiŭm
D.	amantĭbŭs	amantĭbŭs	*D.*	prudentĭbŭs	prudentĭbŭs
A.	amantēs (īs)	amantiă	*A.*	prudentēs (īs)	prudentiă
V.	amantēs	amantiă	*V.*	prudentēs	prudentiă
A.	amantĭbŭs	amantĭbŭs.	*A.*	prudentĭbŭs	prudentĭbŭs.

Exercise XIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Acĕr, ācrīs, ācrĕ,	*sharp, severe.*
Anĭmāl, ānĭmālĭs, *n.*	*animal.*
Brĕvĭs, ĕ,	*short, brief.*
Crūdēlĭs, ĕ,	*cruel.*
Dōlōr, dōlōrĭs, *m.*	*pain, grief.*
Dux, dūcĭs, *m.*	*leader.*
Fertīlĭs, ĕ,	*fertile.*
Fortĭs, ĕ,	*brave.*
Nāvālĭs, ĕ,	*naval.*
Omnĭs, ĕ,	*every, all, whole.*
Pugnă, ae, *f.*	*battle.*
Săpiens, săpientĭs,	*wise.*
Singūlārĭs, ĕ,	*singular, remarkable.*
Utĭlĭs, ĕ,	*useful.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolōres acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legĭbus acrĭbus. 5. Hostis crudēlis. 6. Hostem crudē-

lem. 7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus milĭtis[1] fortis. 9. Virtūte milĭtum[1] fortium. 10. Ager fertĭlis. 11. In agro fertĭli. 12. Agros fertĭles. 13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem. 15. Pugnae navāles. 16. Post pugnas navāles. 17. Singulāris virtus. 18. Singulāri virtūte. 19. Omne anĭmal. 20. Omnia animalia.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altiŏr*, *altissĭmŭs*,[2] high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison: —

I. Terminational Comparison, by endings.
II. Adverbial Comparison, by adverbs.

---

[1] Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

[2] Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissĭmus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus, a, um; alti, ae, i,* etc.; *altissĭmus, a, um; altissĭmi, ae, i,* etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 154: *altior, altius; altiōris,* etc.

I. Terminational Comparison.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings: —

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
iŏr,	**iŏr,**	**iŭs.**	**issĭmŭs,**	**issĭmă,**	**issĭmŭm:**

Altus, altior, altissĭmus: *high, higher, highest.*

lĕvis, levior, levissĭmus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

1. Vowel Stems lose their final vowel: *alto, altior, altissimus.*

II. Adverbial Comparison.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *măgis*, more, and *maxĭme*, most, to the positive: —

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxĭme arduus,
Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

Model for Parsing.

Orātŏr clārĭōr, *A more renowned orator.*

Clarĭor is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*. Positive, *clārus;* stem, *clāro;* Comparative, *clarior;* Superlative, *clarissĭmus. Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (154). Singular: N. *clarior, clarius;* G. *clarĭōris, clarĭōris*, etc.[1] It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.[2]

Exercise XIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Altŭs, ă, ŭm,	*high, lofty.*
Clārŭs, ă, ŭm,	*distinguished, renowned.*
Intĕr, *prep. with acc.*	*among, in the midst of.*
Mons, montĭs, *m.*	*mountain.*

[1] Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

[2] Give the Rule.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor clarus. 2. Orātor clarior.[1] 3. Orātor clarissīmus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.[1] 6. Oratōres clarissīmi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beatissīma vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissīmum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissīma. 16. Milites fortissīmi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliōres. 19. Libris utilissīmis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes: —

1. Cardinal Numbers:[2] *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.

2. Ordinal Numbers:[2] *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.

3. Distributives:[2] *singŭli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

---

[1] Declined like *tristior*, 154. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII., p. 34.

[2] *Cardinals* denote simply the *number* of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. *Ordinals* denote the *place* of an object in a *series*: *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second. *Distributives* denote the *number* of objects taken at a time: *singŭli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1.	ūnŭs, ună, unŭm,	prīmŭs, *first*,	singŭlī, *one by one.*
2.	duŏ, duae, duŏ,	sĕcundŭs, *second.*	bīnī, *two by two.*
3.	trēs, triă,	tertiŭs, *third*,	ternī (trīnī).
4.	quattuŏr,	quartŭs, *fourth*,	quăternī.
5.	quinquĕ,	quintŭs, *fifth*,	quīnī.
6.	sex,	sextŭs,	sēnī.
7.	septĕm,	septīmŭs,	septēnī.
8.	octŏ.	octāvŭs,	octōnī.
9.	nŏvĕm,	nōnŭs,	nŏvēnī.
10.	dĕcĕm,	dĕcĭmŭs,	dēnī.
11.	undĕcim,	undĕcĭmŭs,	undēnī.
12.	duŏdĕcim,	duŏdĕcĭmŭs,	duŏdēnī.
13.	trĕdĕcim, *or* dĕcĕm ĕt trēs,	tertiŭs dĕcĭmŭs,	ternī dēnī.
20.	vīgintī,	vīcēsĭmŭs,	vīcēnī.
21.	vīgintī ūnŭs, *or* ūnŭs ĕt vīgintī,	vīcēsĭmŭs prīmŭs, *or* ūnŭs ĕt vīcēsĭmŭs,	vīcēnī singŭlī. *or* singŭlī ĕt vīcēnī.
30.	trīgintā,	trīcēsĭmŭs,	trīcēnī.
40.	quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsĭmŭs,	quadrāgēnī.
50.	quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsĭmŭs,	quinquāgēnī.
100.	centŭm,	centēsĭmŭs,	centēnī.
200.	dŭcentī, ae, ă,	dŭcentēsĭmŭs,	dŭcēnī.
1000.	millĕ,	millēsĭmŭs,	singŭlă milliă.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows: —

Unus, *one*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	ūnŭs	ună	ūnŭm	ūnī	ūnae	ūnă
G.	unīŭs	unīŭs	unīŭs	unōrŭm	unārŭm	unōrŭm
D.	unī	unī	unī	unīs	unīs	unīs
A.	unŭm	unăm	unŭm	unōs	unās	ună
V.	unĕ	unā	unŭm	unī	unae	ună
A.	unō	unā	unō;	unīs	unīs	unīs.

	Duo, *two.*			Tres, *three.*	
N.	duŏ	duae	duŏ	trēs, *m. and f.*	triă, *n.*
G.	duōrŭm	duārŭm	duōrŭm	trĭŭm	trĭŭm
D.	duōbŭs	duăbŭs	duōbŭs	trībŭs	trībŭs
A.	duōs, duŏ	duās	duŏ	trēs, trīs	triă
V.	duŏ	duae	duŏ	trēs	triă
A.	duōbus	duābŭs	duōbŭs.	trībŭs	trībŭs.

176. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dŭcenti*, *trĕcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bŏnus: ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

Exercise XV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Annŭs, ī, *m.*	*year.*
Classis, classis, *f.*	*fleet.*
Fortītūdŏ, fortītūdĭnis, *f.*	*fortitude, bravery.*
Impĕrĭŭm, ĭī, *n.*	*reign, power.*
Nāvis, nāvis, *f.*	*ship.*
Proelĭŭm, ĭī, *n.*	*battle.*
Vir, vīrī, *m.*	*man, hero.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Unus[1] liber. 2. Duo[1] libri. 3. Liber primus.[1] 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor[2] anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem[2] dies. 14. Decĭmus dies.[3] 15. Decem horae. 16. Decĭma hora. 17. Decem proelia. 18. Decĭmum proelium. 19. Horă diēi decĭmă.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

---

[1] Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

[2] The indeclinable numeral adjectives (176) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender and in any case.

[3] *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally *masculine*.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgŏ*, I; *tū*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes: —

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hīc*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quīs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *ālīquīs*, some one.

I. Personal Pronouns.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are, —

Ego, *I.*	Tu, *thou.*	Sui, *of himself*, etc.[1]
	SINGULAR.	
Nom. ĕgŏ	tū	
Gen. meī	tuī	suī
Dat. mihī	tībī	sĭbĭ
Acc. mē	tē	sē
Voc.	tū	
Abl. mē;	tē;	sē;
	PLURAL.	
Nom. nōs	vōs	
Gen. nostrūm, nostrī	vestrŭm, vestrī	suī
Dat. nōbīs	vōbīs	sībĭ
Acc. nōs	vōs	sē
Voc.	vōs	
Abl. nōbīs.	vōbīs.	sē.

4. Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

[1] *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

5. *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

II. Possessive Pronouns.

185. From Personal Pronouns are formed the *Possessives:* —

meŭs, ă, ŭm, *my;*	nostĕr, trā, trŭm, *our;*
tuus, a, um, *thy, your;*	vester, tra, trum, *your;*
suus, a, um, *his, her, its;*	suus, a, um, *their.*

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular, Masculine, generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

III. Demonstrative Pronouns.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are, —

Hīc, istĕ, illĕ, ĭs, ipsĕ, ĭdem.

They are declined as follows, —

I. Hic, *this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hujŭs	hujŭs	hujŭs	hōrŭm	hārŭm	hōrŭm
D.	huīc	huic	huīc	hīs	his	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hŏc[1]	hōs	hās	haec
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc;	his	hīs	hīs.

II. Istĕ, *that, that of yours.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	istĕ	istā	istŭd	istī	istae	istă
G.	istīŭs	istiŭs	istīŭs	istōrŭm	istārŭm	istōrŭm
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A.	istŭm	istām	istŭd[1]	istōs	istās	istă
A.	istō	istā	istō;	istīs	istīs	istīs.

III. Illĕ, *he* or *that*, is declined like *istĕ*.

[1] The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. Is, *he*, *this*, *that*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ĭs	eā	ĭd	eī, iī	eae	eă
G.	ejŭs	ejŭs	ejŭs	eōrŭm	eārŭm	eōrŭm
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
A.	eŭm	eām	ĭd [1]	eōs	eās	eă
A.	eō	eā	eō;	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs.

V. Ipsĕ, *self*, *he*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ipsĕ	ipsā	ipsŭm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
G.	ipsĭŭs	ipsĭŭs	ipsĭŭs	ipsōrŭm	ipsārŭm	ipsōrŭm
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A.	ipsŭm	ipsām	ipsŭm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
A.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsīs	ipsis	ipsīs.

VI. Idem, *the same*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ĭdĕm [2]	eădĕm	ĭdĕm	eīdĕm iidĕm	eaedĕm	eădĕm
G.	ejusdĕm	ejusdĕm	ejusdĕm	eōrundĕm	eārundĕm	eōrundĕm
D.	eīdĕm	eīdĕm	eīdĕm	eisdĕm iisdĕm	eisdĕm iisdĕm	eisdĕm iisdĕm
A.	eundĕm	eandĕm	ĭdĕm	eosdĕm	easdĕm	eădĕm
A.	eōdĕm	eādĕm	eōdĕm;	eisdĕm iisdĕm	eisdĕm iisdĕm	eisdĕm iisdĕm.

IV. Relative Pronouns.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows: —

[1] The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

[2] Idem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *ĭdem*, and *iddĕm* to *ĭdem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quī	quae	quŏd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujŭs	cujŭs	cujŭs	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quĭbus	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs
A.	quĕm	quăm	quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō;	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs.

V. Interrogative Pronouns.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are, —

Quĭs and *quī* with their compounds.

I. Quis, *who*, *which*, *what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quĭs	quae	quĭd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujŭs	cujŭs	cujŭs	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs
A.	quĕm	quăm	quĭd	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō;	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs.

II. Quī, *which*, *what?* is declined like the *relative qui*.

VI. Indefinite Pronouns.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are, —

Quĭs and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. But

1. After *sī*, *nĭsī*, *nē*, and *nŭm*, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *quă:* si quae, si quă.

Exercise XVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Consĭlĭŭm, ii, *n.*	*design, plan.*
Epistōlă, ae, *f.*	*letter.*

Ex, *prep. with abl.*	*from.*
Insŭlă, ae, *f.*	*island.*
Părens, părentĭs, *m. and f.*	*parent.*
Pars, partĭs, *f.*	*part, portion.*
Pătriă, ae, *f.*	*country, native country.*
Praeclārŭs, ă, ŭm,	*distinguished.*
Prātŭm, i, *n.*	*meadow.*
Prō, *prep. with abl.*	*for, in behalf of.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,[1] ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.[1] 6. Meă[2] vită. 7. Patriă tuă. 8. Pro patriā tuā.[2] 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris[2] consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic[2] puer, hi puĕri. 15. Haec corōnă, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclāră. 18. Ex hac vită. 19. Illĭus libri. 20. In eă pugnă. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae[2] urbs?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

---

[1] See 184, 4. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules.

[2] The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* Pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 34.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dŏrmĭt*, he is sleeping; *lĕgĭt*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes: —

I. Transitive Verbs, which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*[1] *verbĕrat*, he beats the slave.

II. Intransitive Verbs, which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. Voices.

195. There are two Voices:[2] —

I. The Active Voice, which represents the subject as acting or existing: *păter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. The Passive Voice, which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

II. Moods.

196. Moods[3] are either Definite or Indefinite, —

I. The Definite or Finite Moods make up the finite verb. They are, —

1. The Indicative Mood, which either asserts some-

[1] Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

[2] *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts*, or is *acted upon*.

[3] *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

thing as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lĕgit*, he is reading; *legĭtne*, is he reading?

2. The Subjunctive Mood, which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *let*, etc.: *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The Imperative Mood, which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕge*, read thou.

II. The Indefinite Moods express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives. They are, —

1. The Infinitive, which, like the English infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *legĕre*, to read.

2. The Gerund, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The Supine, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The Participle, which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future; *ămans*, loving; *ămātūrūs*, about to love; and two in the Passive, the Perfect, *ămātūs*, loved, and the Gerundive,[1] *ămandūs*, deserving to be loved.

III. Tenses.

197. There are six tenses: —

I. Three Tenses for Incomplete Action: —

1. Present: *ămŏ*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *ămābăm*, I was loving.
3. Future: *ămābŏ*, I shall love.

[1] Also called the *Future Passive Participle.*

II. Three Tenses for Completed Action: —

1. Perfect: *ămāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *ămāvĕrām*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *ămāvĕrŏ*, I shall have loved.

199. Numbers and Persons. — There are two numbers, Singular and Plural,[1] and three persons, First, Second, and Third.[1]

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj I.	*Conj. II.*	*Conj. III.*	*Conj. IV.*
āre,	**ēre,**	**ĕre,**	**īre.**

201. Stem and Principal Parts. — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb. They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem*.

202. The Entire Conjugation of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.[2]

203. Sum, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

---

[1] As in nouns. See 44.

[2] In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sŭm, *I am.* — Stems, ĕs, *fu.*[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
sŭm,	essĕ,	fuī,	—.[2]

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sŭm,	*I am,*	sŭmŭs,	*we are,*
ĕs,	*thou art,*[3]	estīs,	*you are,*
est,	*he is;*	sunt,	*they are.*

Imperfect.

I was.

ĕrăm,	*I was,*	ĕrāmŭs,	*we were,*
erās,	*thou wast,*	erātīs,	*you were,*
erăt,	*he was;*	erant,	*they were.*

Future.

I shall or *will be.*

ĕrŏ,	*I shall be,*	ĕrīmŭs,	*we shall be,*
erīs,	*thou wilt be,*	erītīs,	*you will be,*
erĭt,	*he will be;*	erunt,	*they will be.*

Perfect.

I have been *was.*

fuī,	*I have been,*	fuīmŭs,	*we have been,*
fuistī,	*thou hast been,*	fuistīs,	*you have been,*
fuĭt,	*he has been;*	fuērunt, fuērĕ,	*they have been.*

Pluperfect.

I had been.

fuĕrăm,	*I had been,*	fuĕrāmŭs,	*we had been,*
fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been,*	fuĕrātīs,	*you had been,*
fuĕrăt,	*he had been;*	fuĕrant,	*they had been.*

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been.*

fuĕrŏ,	*I shall have been,*	fuĕrīmŭs,	*we shall have been,*
fuĕrīs,	*thou wilt have been,*	fuĕrītīs,	*you will have been.*
fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been;*	fuĕrint,	*they will have been.*

[1] *Sum* has two verb-stems, while regular verbs have only one.

[2] The supine is wanting in this verb.

[3] Or, *you are: thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may be.[1]

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sĭm,	*I may be,*	sīmŭs,	*we may be,*
sīs,	*thou mayst be,*	sītĭs,	*you may be,*
sĭt,	*he may be;*	sint,	*they may be.*

Imperfect.

I might, would, or *should be.*

essĕm,	*I might be,*	essēmŭs,	*we might be,*
essēs,	*thou mightst be,*	essētĭs,	*you might be,*
essĕt,	*he might be;*	essent,	*they might be.*

Perfect.

I may have been.

fuĕrĭm,	*I may have been,*	fuĕrĭmŭs,	*we may have been,*
fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been,*	fuĕrĭtĭs,	*you may have been,*
fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been;*	fuĕrint,	*they may have been.*

Pluperfect.

I might, would, or *should have been.*

fuissĕm,	*I might have been,*	fuissēmŭs,	*we might have been,*
fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been,*	fuissētĭs,	*you might have been,*
fuissĕt,	*he might have been;*	fuissent,	*they might have been.*

Imperative.

Pres.	ĕs,	*be thou,*	estĕ,	*be ye.*
Fut.	estŏ,	*thou shalt be,*[2]	estōtĕ,	*ye shall be,*
	estŏ,	*he shall be;*	suntŏ,	*they shall be.*

Infinitive.

Pres.	essĕ,	*to be.*
Perf.	fuissĕ,	*to have been.*
Fut.	fŭtūrŭs[3] essĕ,	*to be about to be.*

Participle.

Fut.	fŭtūrŭs,[3]	*about to be.*

---

[1] The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let:* sit, *he may be, may he be, let him be.*

[2] The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let:* esto, *thou shalt be,* or *be thou;* sunto, *they shall be,* or *let them be.*

[3] *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus:* N. *futūrus, a, um,* G. *futūri, ae, i;* so in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

RULE XXXV. — Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite[1] Verb agrees with its Subject[2] in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificāvit,[3] *God made the world.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrannos introducitis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES. — These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

Thēbāni accūsāti sunt,[4] *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — The subject is generally omitted —

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipulos mŏneo,[5] ut studia ăment,[5] *I instruct pupils to love*[6] *their studies.* Quint.

---

[1] See 196, I.

[2] With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made:* but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused.*

[3] *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego;* and *introducītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos.*

[4] The verb *accusāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accusāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

[5] The subject of *moneo* is *ego.* It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you, he,* or *they,* but must be *I.*

Ut—ament means literally *that they may love.* The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii,* they, referring to *discipŭlos.* It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent,* but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipŭlos,* which shows *who* are here meant by *they.*

[6] *To love,* or, more literally, *that they may love.*

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

I. Directions for Parsing Verbs.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (201).

2. Give the Principal Parts (201), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.[1]

3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

Models for parsing the verb sum.

1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs[2] ĕrāmŭs, *We were.*

Erāmus is an intransitive irregular[3] verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, ——[4]. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram*, *eras*, *erat*, *erāmus*, *erātis*, *erant*. The form *erāmus* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *First* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its *subject nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Sum without Subject.*[5]

Fuī, *I have been.*

Fui is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum*, *esse*, *fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui*, *fuisti*,

[1] That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

[2] *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

[3] Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

[4] The *Supine* is wanting.

[5] That is, without any subject expressed.

fuit ; fŭmus, fuistis, fuērunt, or *fuēre*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *First* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied[1] in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

Exercise XVII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.[2] 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.[2] 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, erĭtis.[2] 6. Erit, erunt. 7. Fui, fŭĕram, fŭĕro. 8. Fŭĭmus, fuerāmus, fuerĭmus. 9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fŭĕrat, fŭĕrant. 12. Fŭĕrit, fŭĕrint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fŭĕrim, fuissem. 18. Fuerĭmus, fuissēmus. 19. Fŭĕrit, fŭĕrint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He[3] is, they[3] are. 2. He has been, they have been. 3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been. 7. I[3] was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

---

[1] See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

[2] In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum, nos sumus, ii sunt.*

[3] The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is = est.*

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite[1] Verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius[2] regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pătent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vīcīt, *The king conquered.*

Rex is a noun (39) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (47); of Class I., as its stem ends in a consonant (x = g-s, of which *s* is the ending, while *g* belongs to the *stem.* See 56); STEM, *reg.* Singular: *rex, regis, regi, regem, rex, rege.* Plural: *reges, regum, regĭbus, reges, reges, regĭbus.* It is of the Masculine gender, by 42, I. 1.; is in the Nominative Singular; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III.: "The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative."

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cătŏ, Cātōnĭs, *m.*	*Cato*, a distinguished Roman.
Crūdŭs, ă, ŭm,	*unripe.*
Dīlĭgens, Dīlĭgentĭs,	*diligent.*
Discĭpŭlŭs, ī, *m.*	*pupil.*

---

[1] See 196, I.

[2] In these examples, the *subjects* are *Servius, portae,* and *rex.*

Germānĭă, ae, *f.*	*Germany.*
Jūcundŭs, ă, ŭm.	*pleasant, delightful.*
Laudābĭlĭs, ĕ.	*praiseworthy, laudable.*
Mātūrŭs, ă, ŭm.	*ripe.*
Pōmŭm, ī, *n.*	*fruit.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Pax[1] jucunda[2] est.[3] 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuĕrunt. 6. Virtus laudabĭlis est. 7. Libri utĭles sunt. 8. Illi libri utĭles erunt. 9. Ille liber utĭlis fuĕrat. 10. Utĭlis[4] fuisti. 11. Utĭles fuistis. 12. Germania fertĭlis est. 13. Agri fertĭles fuĕrant. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma matūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milĭtes fortes sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The pupil is diligent.[5] 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

---

[1] *Pax* is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

[2] *Jucunda* is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 34.

[3] *Est* is a verb in the *Indicative* mood, *Present* tense, *Third* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

[4] *Utĭlis* agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

[5] In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangemen. of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun[1] denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,[1] *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, *I am a messenger.*

Nuntius is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *nuntio.* Singular; *nuntius, nuntii, nuntio, nuntium, nuntie, nuntio.* Plural; *nuntii, nuntiōrum nuntiis, nuntios, nuntii, nuntiis.* It is of the Masculine Gender by 51; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun

[1] Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, I, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate.* When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a noun with a passive verb, the noun thus used is called a *predicate noun.* Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns.*

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num*:

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scrībitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scrībit*, Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scrībit*, Is he writing?

Exercise XIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ancŭs, ī, *m.*	*Ancus*, Roman king.
Conditŏr, conditōrĭs, *m.*	*founder.*
Dēmosthēnēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Demosthenes*, Athenian orator.
Ebriĕtās, ēbriĕtātĭs, *f.*	*drunkenness.*
Graecŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Greek, Grecian.*
Graecus, ī, *m.*	*Greek, a Greek.*
Insānĭă, ae, *f.*	*insanity, madness.*
Inventŏr, inventōrĭs, *m.*	*inventor.*
Mātĕr, mātrĭs, *f.*	*mother.*
Mundŭs, ī, *m.*	*world, universe.*
Nonnĕ, *interrog. part.*	expects answer *yes.*
Nŭm, *interrog. part.*	expects answer *no.*
Phĭlŏsŏphĭă, ae, *f.*	*philosophy.*
Rōmă, ae, *f.*	*Rome.*
Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Roman.*
Rōmānŭs, ī, *m.*	*Roman, a Roman.*
Rōmŭlŭs, ī, *m.*	*Romulus*, the founder of Rome.
Scīpĭŏ, Scīpiōnĭs, *m.*	*Scipio*, Roman general.

II. *Translate into English.*[1]*

1. Ancus[2] fuit[3] rex[4]. 2. Nonne[5] Romŭlus rex fŭĕrat? 3. Romŭlus rex fŭĕrat. 4. Quis conditor Romae[6] fuit? 5. Romŭlus conditor Romae fuit. 6. Ebriĕtas est insania. 7. Patria[7] est parens omnium nostrum.[6] 8. Graeci[7] multārum artium[8] inventōres erant. 9. Demosthĕnes orātor fuit.

* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit. 12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicĕro clarissĭmus[9] orātor fuit. 14. Cantus lusciniae jucundissĭmus[9] est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who[10] was the king?[11] 2. Was not[12] Romulus king?[11] 3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the Romans? 5. Was not[12] Scipio the leader of the Romans? 6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

---

[1] In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

[2] See Rule III. page 57.

[3] See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

[4] *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in *case*, according to Rule I. page 59.

[5] See 346, II. 1 above.

[6] Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 21.

[7] In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

[8] *Artium* depends upon *inventōres*.

[9] In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissĭmus* and *jucundissĭmus* (162)?

[10] See 188.

[11] See Rule I.

[12] *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amŏ, *I love.* — Stem, *ăma.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
ămŏ,	ămārĕ,	ămāvī,	ămātŭm.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ămŏ,	*I love,*	ămāmŭs,	*we love,*
ămās,	*thou lovest,*	ămātĭs,	*you love,*
ămăt,	*he loves;*	ămant,	*they love.*

Imperfect.

I loved, was loving, did love.

ămābăm,	*I was loving,*	ămābāmŭs,	*we were loving,*
ămābās,	*thou wast loving,*	ămābātĭs,	*you were loving,*
ămābăt,	*he was loving;*	ămābant,	*they were loving.*

Future.

I shall or *will love.*

ămābŏ,	*I shall love,*	ămābĭmŭs,	*we shall love,*
ămābĭs,	*thou wilt love,*	ămābĭtĭs,	*you will love,*
ămābĭt,	*he will love;*	ămābunt,	*they will love.*

Perfect.

I loved, have loved.

ămāvī,	*I have loved,*	ămāvĭmŭs,	*we have loved,*
ămāvistī,	*thou hast loved,*	ămāvistĭs,	*you have loved,*
ămāvĭt,	*he has loved;*	ămāvērunt, ērĕ,	*they have loved.*

Pluperfect.

I had loved.

ămāvĕrăm,	*I had loved,*	ămāvĕrāmŭs,	*we had loved,*
ămāvĕrās,	*thou hadst loved,*	ămāvĕrātĭs,	*you had loved,*
ămāvĕrăt,	*he had loved;*	ămāvĕrant,	*they had loved.*

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have loved.*

ămāvĕrŏ,	*I shall have loved,*	ămāvĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have loved,*	ămāvĕrĭtĭs,	*you will have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭt,	*he will have loved;*	ămāvĕrint,	*they will have loved.*

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may love.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ămĕm,	*I may love,*	**ămēmŭs,**	*we may love,*
ămēs,	*thou mayst love,*	**ămētĭs,**	*you may love,*
ămĕt,	*he may love;*	**ăment,**	*they may love.*

Imperfect.

I might, would, or *should love.*

ămārĕm,	*I might love,*	**ămārēmŭs,**	*we might love,*
ămārēs,	*thou mightst love,*	**ămārētĭs,**	*you might love,*
ămārĕt,	*he might love;*	**ămārent,**	*they might love.*

Perfect.

I may have loved.

ămāvĕrĭm,	*I may have loved,*	**ămāvĕrīmŭs,**	*we may have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have loved,*	**ămāvĕrĭtĭs,**	*you may have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭt,	*he may have loved;*	**ămāvĕrint,**	*they may have loved.*

Pluperfect.

I might, would, or *should have loved.*

ămāvissĕm,	*I might have loved,*	**ămāvissēmŭs,**	*we might have loved,*
ămāvissēs,	*thou mightst have loved,*	**ămāvissētĭs,**	*you might have loved,*
ămāvissĕt,	*he might have loved;*	**ămāvissent,**	*they might have loved.*

Imperative.

Pres. **ămā,**	*love thou;*	**ămātĕ,**	*love ye.*
Fut. **ămātō,**	*thou shalt love,*	**ămātōtĕ,**	*ye shall love,*
ămātō,	*he shall love;*	**ămantō,**	*they shall love.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **ămārĕ,** *to love.*
Perf. **ămāvissĕ,** *to have loved.*
Fut. **ămātūrŭs**[1] **essĕ,** *to be about to love.*

Participle.

Pres. **ămans,**[2] *loving.*
Fut. **ămātūrŭs,**[1] *about to love.*

Gerund.

Gen. **ămandī,** *of loving,*
Dat. **ămandŏ,** *for loving,*
Acc. **ămandŭm,** *loving,*
Abl. **ămandŏ,** *by loving.*

Supine.

Acc. **ămātŭm,** *to love,*
Abl. **ămātū,** *to love, be loved.*

[1] Decline like *bonus,* 148.
[2] Decline like *prudens,* 157.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.* — Stem, *ăma.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ămŏr,	ămārī,	ămātŭs sŭm.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămŏr	ămāmŭr
ămārĭs, *or* rĕ	ămāmĭnī
ămātŭr;	ămantŭr.

Imperfect.

I was loved.

ămābăr	ămābāmŭr
ămābārĭs, *or* rĕ	ămābāmĭnī
ămābātŭr;	ămābantŭr.

Future.

I shall or *will be loved.*

ămābŏr	ămābĭmŭr
ămābĕrĭs, *or* rĕ	ămābĭmĭnī
ămābĭtŭr;	ămābuntŭr.

Perfect.

I have been or *was loved.*

ămātŭs sŭm[1]	ămātī sŭmŭs
ămātŭs ĕs	ămātī estĭs
ămātŭs est;	ămātī sunt.

Pluperfect.

I had been loved.

ămātŭs ĕrăm[1]	ămātī ĕrāmŭs
ămātŭs ĕrās	ămātī ĕrātĭs
ămātŭs ĕrăt;	ămātī ĕrant.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been loved.*

ămātŭs ĕrŏ[1]	ămātī ĕrĭmŭs
ămātŭs ĕrĭs	ămātī ĕrĭtĭs
ămātŭs ĕrĭt;	ămātī ĕrunt.

[1] *Fui, fuisti,* etc., are sometimes used for *sum, es,* etc.; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum.* So *fuĕram, fuĕras,* etc., for *ĕram, ĕras,* etc.; also *fuĕro, fuĕris,* etc., *for ĕro, ĕris,* etc.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may be loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămĕr	ămēmŭr
ămērĭs, *or* rĕ	ămēmĭnī
ămētŭr;	ăment̆ur.

Imperfect.

I might, would, or *should be loved.*

ămārĕr	ămārēmŭr
ămārērĭs, *or* rĕ	ămārēmĭnī
ămārētŭr;	ămārentŭr.

Perfect.

I may have been loved.

ămātŭs sĭm[1]	ămātī sīmŭs
ămātŭs sīs	ămātī sītĭs
ămātŭs sĭt;	ămātī sint.

Pluperfect.

I might, would, or *should have been loved.*

ămātŭs essĕm[1]	ămātī essēmŭs
ămātŭs essēs	ămātī essētĭs
ămātŭs essĕt;	ămātī essent.

Imperative.

Pres. ămārĕ, *be thou loved;*	ămāmĭnī, *be ye loved.*
Fut. ămātŏr, *thou shalt be loved,*	
ămātŏr, *he shall be loved;*	ămantŏr, *they shall be loved.*

Infinitive.

Pres. ămārī, *to be loved.*

Perf. ămātŭs essĕ, *to have been loved.*

Fut. ămātŭm īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

Participle.

Perf. ămātŭs, *having been loved.*

Ger.[2] ămandŭs, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

---

[1] *Fuĕrim, fuĕris,* etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis,* etc. So also *fuissem, fuisses,* etc., for *essem, esses,* etc.

[2] Ger. = Gerundive. See 196, 4.

MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vōs laudāvistĭs, *You have praised.*

Laudavistis is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*, STEM, *lauda*. Principal Parts: *laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudā'um.* Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi, laudavisti, laudāvit, laudavīmus, laudavistis, laudavērunt*, or *laudavēre.* The form *laudavistis* is found in the *Active* voice, *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *Second* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistĭs, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*, while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

FIRST CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vĭtŭpĕrō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *to blame.*
Laudō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *to praise.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.[1] 2. Amas, amābas, amābis. 3. Amat, amant.[1] 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābit, amā-

[1] The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo, amābam, amābo,* have the letters *am*

bunt.[1] 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabĭmus. 7. Amāvi, amavĕram, amavĕro. 8. Amāvit, amavĕrat, amavĕrit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavĕram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavĕro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavĕrim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverīmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavĕrit, amavĕrint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

FIRST CONJUGATION — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amabēris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

---

in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, *o*, *ābam*, *ābo*. Originally, however, these forms had not only *am*, but *ama* in common, as *amo* was originally ama-o. This common basis *ama* is the *stem* of the verb. Such forms as *ama-t* and *ama-nt* show the stem in full. They are formed respectively by adding *t* and *nt* to the stem.

[1] Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *bunt* differs from the singular ending *bit*, not only in having *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: BIT, BUNT.

5. Amabĭtur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabĭmur. 7. Amātus[1] sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti[1] sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

---

[1] The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION — Both Voices.

Exercise XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.[1] 2. Laudābo, laudābor.[2] 3. Laudābam, laudābar.[2] 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.[2] 6. Laudat, laudatur.[1] 7. Amābat, amabātur. 8. Amābit, amabĭtur. 9. Amet, amētur. 10. Amāret, amarētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavĕrat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavĕrit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

---

[1] In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices, — the Active and the Passive, — and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r;* the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r;* or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudātur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

[2] Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings, — in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — First and Second Declensions.[1] Direct Object.

RULE V. — Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object[2] of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedīfĭcāvit, *God made the world.*[3] Cic. Lībĕra rem pŭblĭcam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pŏpŭli Romāni sālūtem dēfendīte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

---

[1] It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (48, 51). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

[2] The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *salūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

[3] In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made;* but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *defendīte*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem pŭblĭcam* follows *lībĕra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deŭs mundŭm aedĭfĭcāvĭt, *God made the world.*

Mundum is a noun (39) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (47); STEM, *mundo*. Singular: *mundus, mundi, mundo, mundum, munde, mundo.* Plural: *mundi, mundōrum, mundis, mundos, mundi, mundis.* It is of the Masculine gender, by 51; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

Exercise XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aedĭfĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to build.*
Arŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to plough.*
Cantŏ, ārĕ, avī, ātŭm,	*to sing.*
Itălĭă, ae, *f.*	*Italy.*
Lĭbĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to liberate.*
Rĕnŏvŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to renew.*
Spērŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to hope.*
Tarquĭnĭŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*Tarquinius*, Roman king.
Thĕmistŏclēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Themistocles*, Athenian commander.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lusciniam laudo.[1] 2. Lusciniam laudāmus. 3. Luscinias laudat. 4. Luscinias laudant. 5. Luscinia laudātur. 6. Lusciniae laudantur. 7. Patriam amāmus. 8. Pro patriā[2] pugnabĭmus.[2] 9. Nonne[3] Themistŏcles patriam liberāvit? 10. Patriam liberāvit. 11. Italiam lĭbĕravērunt. 12. Italia liberāta[4] est. 13. Tarquinius templum aedĭfĭcā-

[1] *Lusciniam* is the *Direct Object* of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

[2] See Rule XXXII. page 26, and vocabulary page 73.

[3] See 346, II. 1, page 59.

[4] For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedĭfĭcābat. 15. Templa aedĭfĭcavĕrant. 16. Templa aedĭfĭcāta erant. 17. Templum aedĭfĭcātum erit. 18. Puĕrum laudabāmus. 19. Puĕri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne[1] bellum renovātum est?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not[1] praise the boys?[2] 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not[1] liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

FIRST CONJUGATION — THIRD DECLENSION.[3]

ADVERBS.

RULE LI. — Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs[4] qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Săpientes felĭcĭter[4] vīvunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Făcĭle[4] doctissĭmus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud[4] ălĭter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

---

[1] See 346, II. 1, page 59.

[2] The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

[3] The pupil should now review the Third Declension (55–64).

[4] The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Felĭcĭter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (live *happily*). *Facĭle*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissĭmus*, the most learned (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *ălĭter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs fēlīcĭtĕr vīvunt, *The wise live happily.*

Felicĭter is an adverb, and qualifies *vīvunt*, according to Rule LI.: "Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS."

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elŏquentĭă, ae, *f.*	*eloquence.*
Expugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to take, take by storm.*
Fortĭtĕr, *adv.*	*bravely.*
Jŭventūs, jŭventūtĭs, *f.*	*youth.*
Ornŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to adorn, be an ornament to.*
Piĕtās, piĕtātĭs, *f.*	*filial affection, piety, duty.*
Pugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to fight.*
Servŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to preserve, keep, save.*
Vŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to fly.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne[1] avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem[2] aedĭfĭcāvit. 6. Urbs aedĭfĭcāta[3] est. 7. Urbes aedĭfĭcātae[3] erunt. 8. Milĭtes fortĭter[4] pugnavērunt. 9. Scipio[5] milĭtes laudāvit. 10. Scipio[5] milĭtum virtūtem laudābat. 11. Scipiōnem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milĭtes patriam amant. 16. Milĭtes[5] pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piĕtas puĕros ornat. 18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

---

[1] See 346, II. 1, page 59.

[2] *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

[3] Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

[4] *Fortĭter*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāvērunt*, according to Rule LI.

[5] In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not[1] love birds?[2] 3. We love birds.[2] 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not[1] save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shepherds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.[3]

EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to assemble, call together.*
Duplĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to double, increase.*
Dux, dŭcĭs, *m.*	*general, leader.*
Fĭdēs, fĭdēī, *f.*	*faith, fidelity, word,*[4] *promise.*
Fŭgŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to rout.*
Hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs, *m.*	*man.*
Sĕnātŭs, ūs, *m.*	*senate.*
Stĭmŭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to stimulate.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homĭnes[5] cantum lusciniae[6] laudant. 2. Cantus lusciniae laudātur. 3. Romŭlus exercĭtum fugat. 4. Nonne

---

[1] See 346, II. 1, page 59.

[2] Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

[3] The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 120).

[4] To keep one's word, *fidem servāre:* I keep my word, *fidem meam servo,* or *fidem servo,* as the Latin possessives, *meus,* my, *tuus,* your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

[5] In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homĭnes* (60), *mīlĭtes* (58), *stimulāvit* (205)?

[6] See Rule XVI. page 21.

exercĭtum fugavīmus? 5. Exercĭtus fugātus est. 6. Exercĭtus fugātus erit. 7. Consul senātum convocāvit. 8. Senātus convocātus est. 9. Senātus consŭlem laudāvit. 10. Spes victoriae mīlĭtes stimulāvit. 11. Numĕrum diērum duplicāvi. 12. Numĕrus diērum duplicātus est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.[1] 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — Adjectives.[2]

Exercise XXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to enlarge.*
Condemnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to condemn.*
Hannĭbăl, Hannĭbălĭs, *m.*	*Hannibal*, Carthaginian general.
Innŏcens, innŏcentĭs,	*innocent.*
Nōbĭlĭs, ĕ,	*noble.*
Nŏvŭs, ă, ŭm,	*new.*
Occŭpŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to occupy.*
Pūnĭcŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Carthaginian, Punic.*

[1] See note 4, preceding page.

[2] The pupil should now review Adjectives (146–162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam[1] ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram[1] ampliavĕrat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta[2] est. 5. Hannĭbal multas civitātes occupāvit. 6. Judĭces hominem innocentissĭmum[3] condemnavērunt. 7. Num Punĭcum bellum renovātum est? 8. Nonne Punĭcum bellum renovātum est? 9. Punĭcum bellum renovātum est. 10. Romāni nobilissĭmas[3] urbes expugnavērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION — PRONOUNS.[4]

EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Agīs, Agĭdĭs, *m.*	*Agis*, king of Sparta.
Dēlectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to delight.*
Diligentiă, ae, *f.*	*diligence.*
Nōn, *adv.*	*not.*
Sălūtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to salute.*
Suŭs, ă, ŭm,	*his, her, its, their.*

[1] See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

[2] Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

[3] In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

[4] The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc[1] urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabīmus. 3. Quis te[2] salutāvit? 4. Pater meus[1] te salūtat. 5. Haec[1] vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos[2] delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se[2] amant. 8. Fratres tui[1] laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos[3] amat. 11. Puĕri boni parentes suos[3] amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not[4] blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not[5] your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not[5] king Agis praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not[4] blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

---

[1] These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 34. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

[2] Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

[3] The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular;* but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puĕri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural.*

[4] When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb;* but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

[5] Nonne.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.* — Stem, *mŏne.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mŏneŏ,	mŏnērĕ,	mŏnuī,	mŏnĭtŭm.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏneō	mŏnēmŭs
mŏnēs	mŏnētĭs
mŏnĕt ;	mŏnent.

Imperfect.

I was advising.

mŏnēbăm	mŏnēbāmŭs
mŏnēbās	mŏnēbātĭs
mŏnēbăt ;	mŏnēbant.

Future.

I shall or *will advise.*

mŏnēbō	mŏnēbĭmŭs
mŏnēbĭs	mŏnēbĭtĭs
mŏnēbĭt ;	mŏnēbunt.

Perfect.

I advised or *have advised.*

mŏnuī	mŏnuĭmŭs
mŏnuistī	mŏnuistĭs
mŏnuĭt ;	mŏnuērunt, *or* ērĕ.

Pluperfect.

I had advised.

mŏnuĕrăm	mŏnuĕrāmŭs
mŏnuĕrās	mŏnuĕrātĭs
mŏnuĕrăt ;	mŏnuĕrant.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have advised.*

mŏnuĕrō	mŏnuĕrĭmŭs
mŏnuĕrĭs	mŏnuĕrĭtĭs
mŏnuĕrĭt ;	mŏnuĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ăm**	mŏne**āmŭs**
mŏne**ās**	mŏne**ātĭs**
mŏne**ăt ;**	mŏne**ant.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should advise.*

mŏnē**rĕm**	mŏnē**rēmŭs**
mŏnē**rēs**	mŏnē**rētĭs**
mŏnē**rĕt ;**	mŏnē**rent.**

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mŏnu**ĕrĭm**	mŏnu**ĕrĭmŭs**
mŏnu**ĕrĭs**	mŏnu**ĕrĭtĭs**
mŏnu**ĕrĭt ;**	mŏnu**ĕrint.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should have advised.*

mŏnu**issĕm**	mŏnu**issēmŭs**
mŏnu**issēs**	mŏnu**issētĭs**
mŏnu**issĕt ;**	mŏnu**issent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	mŏnē, *advise thou ;*	mŏnē**tĕ,** *advise ye.*
FUT.	mŏnē**tŏ,** *thou shalt advise,*	mŏnē**tōtĕ,** *ye shall advise,*
	mŏnē**tŏ,** *he shall advise ;*	mŏne**ntŏ,** *they shall advise*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	mŏnē**rĕ,** *to advise.*	
PERF.	mŏnu**issĕ,** *to have advised.*	
FUT.	mŏnĭtū**rŭs esse,** *to be about to advise.*	

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	mŏne**ns,**	*advising.*
FUT.	mŏnĭtū**rŭs,**	*about to advise.*

GERUND.

Gen.	mŏne**ndī,**	*of advising,*
Dat.	mŏne**ndŏ,**	*for advising,*
Acc.	mŏne**ndŭm,**	*advising,*
Abl.	mŏne**ndŏ,**	*by advising.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	mŏnĭtŭ**m,**	*to advise,*
Abl.	mŏnĭtū,	*to advise, be advised.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.* — Stem, *mŏne.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mŏne**ŏr**,	mŏnē**rī**,	mŏnĭtŭ**s sŭm.**

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ŏr**	mŏnē**mŭr**
mŏnē**ris**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏnē**mĭnī**
mŏnē**tŭr** ;	mŏne**ntŭr.**

Imperfect.

I was advised.

mŏnē**bār**	mŏnē**bāmŭr**
mŏnē**bāris**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏnē**bāmĭnī**
mŏnē**bātŭr** ;	mŏnē**bantŭr.**

Future.

I shall or *will be advised.*

mŏnē**bŏr**	mŏnē**bĭmŭr**
mŏnē**bĕris**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏnē**bĭmĭnī**
mŏnē**bĭtŭr** ;	mŏnē**buntŭr.**

Perfect.

I have been or *was advised.*

mŏnĭtŭ**s sŭm**[1]	mŏnĭtī **sŭmŭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s ĕs**	mŏnĭtī **estĭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s est** ;	mŏnĭtī **sunt.**

Pluperfect.

I had been advised.

mŏnĭtŭ**s ĕrăm**[1]	mŏnĭtī **ĕrāmus**
mŏnĭtŭ**s ĕrās**	mŏnĭtī **ĕrātĭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s erăt** ;	mŏnĭtī **ĕrant.**

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been advised.*

mŏnĭtŭ**s ĕrō**[1]	mŏnĭtī **ĕrĭmŭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s ĕrĭs**	mŏnĭtī **ĕrĭtĭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s ĕrĭt** ;	mŏnĭtī **ĕrunt.**

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ăr**	mŏne**āmŭr**
mŏne**ārĭs,** *or* **rĕ**	mŏne**āmĭnī**
mŏne**ātŭr ;**	mŏne**antŭr.**

Imperfect.

I might, would, or *should be advised.*

mŏnē**rĕr**	mŏnē**rēmŭr**
mŏnē**rērĭs,** *or* **rĕ**	mŏnē**rēmĭnī**
mŏnē**rētŭr ;**	mŏnē**rentŭr.**

Perfect.

I may have been advised.

mŏnĭtŭ**s sĭm**[1]	mŏnĭtī **sīmŭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s sīs**	mŏnĭtī **sītĭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s sĭt ;**	mŏnĭtī **sint.**

Pluperfect.

I might, would, or *should have been advised.*

mŏnĭtŭ**s essĕm**[1]	mŏnĭtī **essēmŭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s essēs**	mŏnĭtī **essētĭs**
mŏnĭtŭ**s essĕt ;**	mŏnĭtī **essent.**

Imperative.

Pres.	mŏnē**rĕ,** *be thou advised ;*	mŏnē**mĭnī,** *be ye advised.*
Fut.	mŏnē**tŏr,** *thou shalt be advised,*	
	mŏnē**tŏr,** *he shall be advised ;*	mŏne**ntŏr,** *they shall be advised.*

Infinitive.

Pres.	mŏnē**rī,** *to be advised,*
Perf.	mŏnĭtŭ**s essĕ,** *to have been advised,*
Fut.	mŏnĭtŭ**m īrī,** *to be about to be advised.*

Participle.

Perf.	mŏnĭtŭ**s,** *advised,*
Ger.[1]	mŏne**ndŭs,** *to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Active Voice.

Exercise XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mŏneŏ, mŏnērĕ, mŏnui, mŏnĭtŭm,	*to advise.*
Pāreŏ, pārērĕ, pāruī, pārĭtŭm,	*to obey.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.[1] 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebĭmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuĕram, monuĕro. 7. Monuĭmus, monuerāmus, monuerĭmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuĕrat, monuĕrant. 10. Monuĕrit, monuĕrint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuĕrim, monuissem. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuĕrit, monuĕrint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

---

[1] The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — Active Voice.

Exercise XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to sing.*
Spērŏ, ārĕ, āvī. ātŭm,	*to hope.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.[1] 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus. 8. Sperabĭmus, parebĭmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Speravi, parui. 11. Speravĕram, paruĕram. 12. Speravĕro, paruĕro. 13. Speravĭmus, paruĭmus. 14. Speravĕrat, paruĕrat. 15. Speravĕrint, paruĕrint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

---

[1] In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations, — the First and the Second, — and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Active Voice.

Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XXX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aurŭm, ī, *n.*	*gold.*
Flōs, flōrĭs, *m.*	*flower.*
Hăbeŏ, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, hăbĭtŭm,	*to have, hold.*
Mĕreŏ, mĕrērĕ, mĕruī, mĕrĭtŭm,	*to deserve, merit.*
Phĭlōsŏphŭs, ī, *m.*	*philosopher.*
Pondŭs, pondĕrĭs, *n.*	*weight, mass.*
Praebeŏ, praebērĕ, praebuī, praebĭtŭm,	*to furnish, give.*
Praemiŭm, iī, *n.*	*reward.*
Tăceŏ, tăcērĕ, tăcuī, tăcĭtŭm,	*to be silent.*
Terreŏ, terrērĕ, terruī, terrĭtŭm,	*to frighten, terrify.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puĕri libros habent. 3. Libros utĭles[1] habēmus. 4. Librum utĭlem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum[1] amīcum habēbis? 6. Bonum amīcum habēbo. 7. Bonos amīcos habuĭmus. 8. Rex amīcos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex[2] magnum auri pondus[3] habuĕrat. 11. Gloriam veram habebĭtis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13. Ver praebēbit flores. 14. Philosŏphus tacēbat. 15. Discipŭlus praemium meret.

---

[1] Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

[2] In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject, verb,* and *object,* before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

[3] When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri,* the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three[1] books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.[2] 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebĭmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monĭtus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monĭtus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monĭtus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebītur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebĭmus, monebĭmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

---

[1] Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

[2] *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admŏneŏ, admŏnērĕ, admŏnuī, admŏnĭtŭm,	*to admonish.*
Amŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to love.*
Invĭtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to invite.*
Laudŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to praise.*
Terreŏ, terrērĕ, terruī, terrĭtŭm,	*to terrify.*
Vĭtŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to blame.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabĭtur, terrebĭtur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrĭtus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrĭti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrĭtus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrĭti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrĭti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrĭtus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

SECOND CONJUGATION — Passive Voice.

Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XXXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Apŭd, *prep. with acc.*	*near, before, among.*
Exerceŏ, exercērĕ, exercuī, exercĭtŭm,	*to exercise, train.*
Frāter, frātrĭs, *m.*	*brother.*
Măgistĕr, măgistrī, *m.*	*master, teacher.*
Mĕmŏrĭă, ae, *f.*	*memory.*
Puĕr, puĕrī, *m.*	*boy.*
Quĭs, quae, quĭd,[1]	*who, which, what?*
Rectē, *adv.*	*rightly.*
Tuŭs, ă, ŭm,	*your, yours.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puĕri recte monentur. 5. Discipŭli recte monĭti sunt. 6. Discipŭlus recte monĭtus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonĭtus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonĭti erunt. 9. Nonne admonĭti sumus? 10. Recte admonĭti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

[1] For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exercēātur.[1] 13. Memoria exercebĭtur. 14. Discipŭli apud magistros exercentur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified. 3. Let[2] the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself[3] was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cămillŭs, ī, *m.*	*Camillus*, Roman general.
Exspectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to await, expect.*
Hostīs, is, *m.* and *f.*	*enemy.*
Ingens, ingentīs,	*huge, large, great.*
Lĕgiŏ, lĕgiōnis, *f.*	*legion, body of soldiers.*
Nōn, *adv.*	*not.*
Nŭmĕrŭs, ī, *m.*	*number.*
Optŏ, ārĕ, āvi, ātŭm,	*to wish for, desire.*
Pĕcūniă, ae, *f.*	*money.*

[1] *Exercēātur;* the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196. I 2.

[2] *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

[3] *Himself* = ipse. See 186.

Philŏsŏphŭs, ī, *m.*	*philosopher.*
Praeceptŏr, praeceptōrĭs, *m.*	*teacher.*
Proeliŭm, iī, *n.*	*battle.*
Rōmānŭs, ī, *m.*	*Roman, a Roman.*
Sŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to conquer.*
Vĕrēcundĭă, ae, *f.*	*modesty.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt. 3. Omnes discipŭli paruĕrant.[1] 4. Romāni hostem exspectābant. 5. Romāni[2] ingentem hostium numĕrum[3] exspectavĕrant.[1] 6. Hostes proelium exspectābant. 7. Praeceptor tacēbat. 8. Discipŭli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem ornat. 10. Philosŏphus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philosŏphi pecuniam non optant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you. 3. Did you not await the enemy?[4] 4. We awaited the enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?[5] 14. They were put to flight.

---

[1] In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

[2] Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

[3] *Ingentem hostium numĕrum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

[4] Put the Latin word in the plural.

[5] *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.* — Stem, *reg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rĕgŏ,	rĕgĕrĕ,	rexī,	rectŭm.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgō	rĕgĭmŭs
rĕgĭs	rĕgĭtĭs
rĕgĭt ;	rĕgunt.

Imperfect.

I was ruling.

rĕgēbăm	rĕgēbāmŭs
rĕgēbās	rĕgēbātĭs
rĕgēbăt ;	rĕgēbant.

Future.

I shall or *will rule.*

rĕgăm	rĕgēmŭs
rĕgēs	rĕgētĭs
rĕgĕt ;	rĕgent.

Perfect.

I ruled or *have ruled.*

rexī	rexĭmŭs
rexistī	rexistĭs
rexĭt ;	rexērunt, *or* ērĕ.

Pluperfect.

I had ruled.

rexĕrăm	rexĕrāmŭs
rexĕrās	rexĕrātĭs
rexĕrăt ;	rexĕrant.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have ruled.*

rexĕrō	rexĕrĭmŭs
rexĕrĭs	rexĕrĭtĭs
rexĕrĭt ;	rexĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgâm	rĕg**āmŭs**
rĕg**ās**	rĕg**ātĭs**
rĕg**ăt ;**	rĕg**ant.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should rule.*

rĕg**ĕrĕm**	rĕg**ĕrēmŭs**
rĕg**ĕrēs**	rĕg**ĕrētĭs**
rĕg**ĕret ;**	rĕg**ĕrent.**

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rex**ĕrĭm**	rex**ĕrĭmŭs**
rex**ĕrĭs**	rex**ĕrītĭs**
rex**ĕrĭt ;**	rex**ĕrint.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should have ruled.*

rex**issĕm**	rex**issēmŭs**
rex**issēs**	rex**issētĭs**
rex**issĕt ;**	rex**issent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	rĕg**ĕ,** *rule thou ;*	rĕg**ĭtĕ,**	*rule ye.*
FUT.	rĕg**ĭtō,** *thou shalt rule,*	rĕg**ĭtōtĕ,**	*ye shall rule,*
	rĕg**ĭtō,** *he shall rule ;*	rĕg**untō,**	*they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	rĕg**ĕrĕ,**	*to rule.*
PERF.	rex**issĕ,**	*to have ruled.*
FUT.	rect**ūrŭs essĕ,**	*to be about to rule.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	rĕg**ens,**	*ruling.*
FUT.	rect**ūrŭs,**	*about to rule.*

GERUND.

Gen.	rĕg**endī,**	*of ruling,*
Dat.	rĕg**endō,**	*for ruling,*
Acc.	rĕg**endŭm,**	*ruling,*
Abl.	rĕg**endō,**	*by ruling.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	rect**ŭm,**	*to rule,*
Abl.	rect**ū,**	*to rule, be ruled*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.* — Stem, *reg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rĕgŏr,	rĕgī,	rectŭs sŭm.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgŏr	rĕgĭmŭr
rĕgĕrĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgĭmĭnī
rĕgĭtŭr;	rĕguntŭr.

Imperfect.

I was ruled.

rĕgēbăr	rĕgēbāmŭr
rĕgēbārĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgēbāmĭnī
rĕgēbātŭr;	rĕgēbantŭr.

Future.

I shall or *will be ruled.*

rĕgăr	rĕgēmŭr
rĕgērĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgēmĭnī
rĕgētŭr;	rĕgentŭr.

Perfect.

I have been or *was ruled.*

rectŭs sŭm [1]	rectī sŭmŭs
rectŭs ĕs	rectī estĭs
rectŭs est;	rectī sunt.

Pluperfect.

I had been ruled.

rectŭs ĕrăm [1]	rectī ĕrāmŭs
rectŭs ĕrās	rectī ĕrātĭs
rectŭs ĕrăt;	rectī ĕrant.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been ruled.*

rectŭs ĕrō [1]	rectī ĕrĭmŭs
rectŭs ĕrĭs	rectī ĕrĭtĭs
rectŭs ĕrĭt;	rectī ĕrunt.

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgă**r**	rĕgā**mŭr**
rĕgā**rĭs,** *or* **rĕ**	rĕgā**mĭnī**
rĕgā**tŭr;**	rĕg**antŭr.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should be ruled.*

rĕg**ĕrĕr**	rĕg**ĕrēmŭr**
rĕg**ĕrērĭs,** *or* **rĕ**	rĕg**ĕrēmĭnī**
rĕg**ĕrētŭr;**	rĕg**erentŭr.**

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectŭ**s sĭm** [1]	rectī **sīmŭs**
rectŭ**s sīs**	rectī **sītĭs**
rectŭ**s sĭt;**	rectī **sint.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should have been ruled.*

rectŭ**s essĕm** [1]	rectī **essēmŭs**
rectŭ**s essēs**	rectī **essētĭs**
rectŭ**s essĕt;**	rectī **essent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	rĕg**ĕrĕ,** *be thou ruled;*	rĕg**ĭmĭnī,** *be ye ruled.*
FUT.	rĕg**ĭtŏr,** *thou shalt be ruled,* rĕg**ĭtŏr,** *he shall be ruled;*	rĕg**untŏr,** *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. rĕg**ī,** *to be ruled.*	
PERF. rectŭ**s essĕ,** *to have been ruled.*	PERF. rectŭ**s,** *ruled.*
FUT. rectŭ**m īrī,** *to be about to be ruled.*	GER.[1] rĕg**endŭs,** *to be ruled.*

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION — Active Voice.

Exercise XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcŏ, ĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,	*to lead.*
Rĕgŏ, ĕrĕ, rexī, rectŭm,	*to rule, govern.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regĭmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regĭtis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebatis. 5. Regēbant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexĕram, rexĕro. 9. Rexĭmus, rexerāmus, rexerĭmus. 10. Regas, regĕres, rexēris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerĭtis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regerēmus, regĕrem. 14. Rexĕrit, rexērint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regĭte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — Active Voice.

Exercise XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dīcŏ, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm,	*to say, tell, speak.*
Vŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to call.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.[1] 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocavĭmus, tacuĭmus, dixĭmus. 6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocavērunt, tacuērunt, dixērunt. 8. Vocavĕrat, tacuĕrat, dixĕrat. 9. Vocavĕrint, tacuĕrint, dixĕrint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocārent, tacērent, dicĕrent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicĭte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

---

[1] In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

THIRD CONJUGATION — Active Voice.
Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ănĭmŭs, ī, *m.*	*mind, passion.*
Bĕnĕ, *adv.*	*well.*
Dēfectiŏ, dēfectiōnĭs, *f.*	*eclipse.*
Dĭsertē, *adv.*	*clearly, eloquently.*
Edūcŏ, ēdūcĕrĕ, ēduxī, ēductŭm,	*to lead forth.*
Indĭcŏ, indĭcĕrĕ, indixī, indictŭm,	*to declare.*
Lătīnē, *adv.*	*in Latin.*
Praedĭcŏ, praedĭcĕrĕ, praedixī, praedictŭm,	*to predict, foretell.*
Săpientĕr, *adv.*	*wisely.*
Thălēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Thales*, a philosopher.
Tullŭs, ī, *m.*	*Tullus*, a Roman name.
Vērŭm, ī, *n.*	*truth.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicĕro in senātu dixĕrat? 3. Cicĕro diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5. Philosŏphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosŏphi sapienter dixĕrant. 7. Oratōres Latīne dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes eduxit. 9. Hannĭbal exercītum in Italiam duxit. 10. Quis bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regĭmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regĭtur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regĭmus, regĭmur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — Passive Voice.

Exercise XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducĭmur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducĭtur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monĭtus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monĭti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monĭtus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monĭtus erit, ductus erit.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XL.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundŭs, ī, *m.*	*world.*
Semper, *adv.*	*always, ever.*
Vērŭm, ī, *n.*	*truth.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regĭtur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regētur. 4. Haec civĭtas bene regĭtur. 5. Hae civitātes bene reguntur. 6. Civitātes rectae sunt. 7. Animus regātur. 8. Exercĭtus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercĭtus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum[1] erat. 11. Multa bella indicta[1] sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

[1] Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let[1] the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — Miscellaneous Examples.

Exercise XLI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Gallŭs, ī, *m.*	*Gallus*, a proper name.
Hĭrundō, hĭrundĭnĭs, *f.*	*swallow.*
Lūnă, ae, *f.*	*moon.*
Nuntiŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to proclaim, announce.*
Sensŭs, ūs, *m.*	*feeling, perception.*
Supplĭcĭŭm, ĭī, *n.*	*punishment.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hirundĭnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundĭnes adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipŭli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiōnes solis praedixit. 5. Defectiōnes lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiōnes lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne anĭmal sensus habet. 8. Puĕri tacēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

---

[1] *Let be spoken*, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.* — STEM, *audi.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiŏ,	audīrĕ,	audīvī,	audītŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audīmŭs
audīs	audītĭs
audĭt;	audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiēbăm	audiēbāmŭs
audiēbās	audiēbātĭs
audiēbăt;	audiēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will hear.*

audiăm	audiēmŭs
audiēs	audiētĭs
audiĕt;	audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or *have heard.*

audīvī	audīvĭmŭs
audīvistī	audīvistĭs
audīvĭt;	audīvērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audīvĕrăm	audīvĕrāmŭs
audīvĕrās	audīvĕrātĭs
audīverăt;	audīvĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have heard.*

audīvĕrŏ	audīvĕrĭmŭs
audīvĕrĭs	audīvĕrĭtĭs
audīvĕrĭt;	audīvĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audĭăm	audīāmŭs
audīās	audīātĭs
audĭăt ;	audĭant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should hear.*

audīrĕm	audīrēmŭs
audīrēs	audīrētĭs
audīrĕt ;	audīrent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audīvĕrĭm	audīvĕrĭmŭs
audīvĕrĭs	audīvĕrĭtĭs
audīvĕrĭt ;	audīvĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should have heard.*

audīvissĕm	audīvissēmŭs
audīvissēs	audīvissētĭs
audīvissĕt ;	audīvissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	audī, *hear thou ;*	audītĕ, *hear ye.*
FUT.	audītō, *thou shalt hear,*	audītōtĕ, *ye shall hear,*
	audītō, *he shall hear ;*	audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	audīrĕ, *to hear.*
PERF.	audīvissĕ, *to have heard.*
FUT.	auditūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	audiens, *hearing.*
FUT.	auditūrŭs, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen.	audiendī, *of hearing.*
Dat.	audiendō, *for hearing.*
Acc.	audiendŭm, *hearing.*
Abl.	audiendō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	auditŭm, *to hear.*
Abl.	auditū, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.* — Stem, *audi.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiŏr,	audīrī,	audītŭs sŭm.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiŏr	audīmŭr
audīrĭs, *or* rĕ	audīmĭnī
audītŭr;	audiuntŭr.

Imperfect.

I was heard.

audiēbăr	audiēbāmŭr
audiēbārĭs, *or* rĕ	audiēbāmĭnī
audiēbātŭr;	audiēbāntŭr.

Future.

I shall or *will be heard.*

audiăr	audiēmŭr
audiērĭs, *or* rĕ	audiēmĭnī
audiētŭr;	audiēntŭr.

Perfect.

I have been heard.

audītŭs sŭm [1]	audītī sŭmŭs
audītŭs ĕs	audītī estĭs
audītŭs est;	audītī sunt.

Pluperfect.

I had been heard.

audītŭs ĕrăm [1]	audītī ĕrāmŭs
audītŭs ĕrās	audītī ĕrātĭs
audītŭs ĕrăt;	audītī ĕrant.

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been heard.*

audītŭs ĕrō [1]	audītī ĕrĭmŭs
audītŭs ĕrĭs	audītī ĕrĭtĭs
audītŭs ĕrĭt;	audītī ĕrunt.

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiăr	audiāmŭr
audiārĭs, *or* rĕ	audiāmĭnī
audiātŭr ;	audiantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should be heard.*

audīrĕr	audīrēmŭr
audīrērĭs, *or* rĕ	audīrēmĭnī
audīrētŭr ;	audīrentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

audītŭs sĭm [1]	audītī sīmŭs
audītŭs sīs	audītī sītĭs
audītŭs sĭt ;	audītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, would, or *should have been heard.*

audītŭs essĕm [1]	audītī essēmŭs
audītŭs essēs	audītī essētĭs
audītŭs essĕt ;	audītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	audīrĕ, *be thou heard ;*	audīmĭnī, *be ye heard.*
FUT.	audītŏr, *thou shalt be heard,*	
	audītŏr, *he shall be heard ;*	audiuntŏr, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	audīrī,	*to be heard.*
PERF.	audītŭs essĕ,	*to have been heard.*
FUT.	audītŭm īrī,	*to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	audītŭs,	*heard.*
GER. [1]	audiendŭs,	*to be heard.*

[1] See 206, foot-notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — Active Voice.

Exercise XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to guard.*
Dormiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to sleep.*
Erŭdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to instruct, refine, educate.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiēbas, audies. 2. Audītis, audiebātis, audiētis. 3. Audio, audīmus. 4. Audiēbam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivīmus, audiverāmus, audiverīmus. 7. Audīvi, audivĕram, audivĕro. 8. Audīvit, audivērunt. 9. Audiam, audīrem, audivĕrim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverīmus, audivissēmus. 11. Audīto, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — Active Voice.

Exercise XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invītat, admŏnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invītant, admŏnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admonēbant, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavĕram, admonuĕram, duxĕram, audivĕram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavĕrim, admonuĕrim, duxĕrim, custodivĕrim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — Active Voice.
Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XLIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, *adv.*	*closely, soundly.*
Mūniŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to fortify.*
Sermŏ, sermōnis, *m.*	*discourse, conversation.*
Thrāsўbūlŭs, ī, *m.*	*Thrasybulus*, Athenian general.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milites templum custodiunt. 4. Verum audītis. 5. Verum audīte. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audīmus. 8. Verba mea audivīsti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audīvi. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puĕri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puĕri cantum lusciniae audiēbant. 13. Thrasybūlus urbem munīvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — Passive Voice.

Exercise XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiātur, audiantur. 3. Audīrer, audirēmur. 4. Audītus sum, audīti sumus. 5. Audīti erāmus, audītus eram. 6. Audītus erit, audīti erunt. 7. Audit, audītur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audīrem, audīrer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audīvit, audītus est. 14. Audivĕrat, audītus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — Passive Voice.

Exercise XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodīris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educĭtur, custodītur. 4. Invitabĭtur, admonebĭtur, educētur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabātur, admonebātur, educebātur, custodiebātur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonĭtus sum, eductus sum, custodītus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonĭti erant, educti erant, custodīti erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonītus esses, custodītus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — Passive Voice.
Other Parts of Speech.

Exercise XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellŭm, ī, *n.*	*war.*
Bĕnignē, *adv.*	*kindly.*
Cīvīlis, ĕ.	*civil.*

Egrĕgiē, *adv.*	*excellently.*
Fīlĭŭs, ii, *m.*	*son.*
Fīnĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm,	*to finish, bring to a close.*
Lēgātĭŏ, lēgātiōnis, *f.*	*embassy.*
Vox, vōcīs, *f.*	*voice.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vox audīta[1] est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus lusciniae audītur. 4. Cantus lusciniārum audiētur. 5. Urbs munīta erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Templa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audīta est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie eruditur. 13. Bellum civīle finītum[1] est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.[2] 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēniensīs, īs, *m.* and *f.*	*an Athenian.*
Cānīs, cānis, *m.* and *f.*	*dog.*
Cŏlŏ, cŏlŭī, cŏluī, cultŭm,	*to practise, cultivate.*
Cŭm, *prep. with abl.*	*with.*

[1] Why *audīta* and *finītum*, instead of *auditus* and *finītus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

[2] *Let be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to strengthen.*
Grex, grĕgĭs, *m.*	*herd, flock.*
Illustrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to illumine.*
Jungŏ, jungĕrĕ, junxī, junctŭm,	*to join.*
Lăbŏr, lăbōrĭs, *m.*	*labor.*
Mŏdestiă, ae, *f.*	*modesty.*
Ovĭs, ŏvĭs, *f.*	*sheep.*
Portŭs, ūs, *m.*	*port, harbor.*
Prūdentiă, ae, *f.*	*prudence.*
Terră, ae, *f.*	*earth.*
Vălētūdŏ, vălētūdĭnĭs, *f.*	*health.*
Vărĭētās, vărĭētātĭs, *f.*	*variety.*
Vĭŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*violate.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia puĕros ornat. 3. Discipūli memoriam exercent. 4. Discipūli tui memoriam exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventūtem erudient. 8. Labor valetudĭnem tuam firmābit. 9. Variĕtas nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudīvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always[1] be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who[2] led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

---

[1] For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

[2] Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quīs* or *quī?* See 188.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **io, ior,** like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

ACTIVE VOICE.

222. Căpio, *I take.* — STEM, *căp.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
căpĭŏ,	căpĕrĕ,	cēpī,	captŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpĭŏ, căpĭs, căpĭt;	căpĭmŭs, căpītĭs, căpiunt.

IMPERFECT.

căpiēbăm, -iēbās, -iēbăt;	căpiēbāmŭs, -iēbātĭs, -iēbant.

FUTURE.

căpiăm, -iēs, -iĕt;	căpiēmŭs, -iētĭs, -ient.

PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -ĭt;	cēpĭmŭs, -istĭs, -ērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpĕrăm, -ĕrās, -ĕrăt;	cēpĕrāmŭs, -ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēpĕrŏ, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt;	cēpĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

căpiăm, -iās, -iăt;	căpiāmŭs, -iātĭs, -iant.

IMPERFECT.

căpĕrĕm, -ĕrēs, -ĕrĕt;	căpĕrēmŭs, -ĕrētĭs, -ĕrent.

PERFECT.

cēpĕrĭm, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt;	cēpĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissĕm, -issēs, -issĕt;	cēpissēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent.

Imperative.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. căpĕ;	căpĭtĕ.
Fut. căpĭtō,	căpĭtōte,
căpĭtō;	căpiuntō.

Infinitive.

Pres.	căpĕrĕ.
Perf.	cēpissĕ.
Fut.	captūrŭs essĕ.

Participle.

Pres.	căpiens.
Fut.	captūrŭs.

Gerund.

Gen.	căpiendī.
Dat.	căpiendō.
Acc.	căpiendŭm.
Abl.	căpiendō.

Supine.

Acc.	captŭm.
Abl.	captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

223. Capior, *I am taken.* — Stem, *căp.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
căpiŏr,	căpī,	captŭs sŭm.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiŏr, căpĕrĭs, căpĭtŭr;	căpīmŭr, căpīmĭnī, căpiuntŭr.

Imperfect.

căpiēbăr, -iēbārĭs, -iēbātŭr;	căpiēbāmŭr, -iēbāmĭnī, -iēbantŭr.

Future.

căpiăr, -iērĭs, -iētŭr;	căpiēmŭr, -iēmĭnī, -ientur.

Perfect.

captŭs sŭm, ĕs, est;	captī sūmŭs, estĭs, sunt.

Pluperfect.

captŭs ĕrăm, ĕrās, ĕrăt;	captī ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant.

Future Perfect.

captŭs ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt;	captī ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
căpiăr, -iārīs, -iātŭr ;	căpiāmŭr, -iāmīnī, -iantŭr.

Imperfect.

căpĕrĕr, -ĕrērīs, -ĕrētŭr ;	căpĕrēmŭr, -ĕrēmīnī, -ĕrentŭr.

Perfect.

captŭs sīm, sīs, sĭt ;	captī sīmŭs, sītĭs, sint.

Pluperfect.

captŭs essĕm, essēs, essĕt ;	captī essēmŭs, essētĭs, essent.

Imperative.

Pres. căpĕrĕ ;	căpĭmīnī.
Fut. căpĭtŏr, căpĭtŏr ;	căpiuntŏr.

Infinitive.

Pres. căpī.
Perf. captŭs essĕ.
Fut. captŭm īrī.

Participle.

Perf. captŭs.
Ger. căpiendŭs.[1]

Exercise XLIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

A, ăb, *prep. with abl.*	*from, by.*
Accipiŏ, accĭpĕrĕ, accēpī, acceptŭm,	*to receive.*
Bellŭm, ī, *n.*	*war.*
Căpiŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpi, captŭm,	*to take, capture.*
Carthāgŏ, Carthāgĭnĭs, *f.*	*Carthage*, city in Africa.
Cornēlĭŭs, ii, *m.*	*Cornelius*, a proper name.
Gallŭs, ī, *m.*	*Gaul, a Gaul.*[2]

[1] The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

[2] The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jăciŏ, jăcĕrĕ, jēcī, jactŭm,	*to cast, throw, hurl.*
Lăpĭs, lăpĭdĭs, *m.*	*stone.*
Lux, lūcĭs, *f.*	*light.*
Mūrŭs, ī, *m.*	*wall.*
Publĭŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*Publius*, a proper name.
Rēgŭlus, ī, *m.*	*Regulus*, Roman general.
Tēlŭm, ī , *n.*	*javelin.*
Trōjā, ae, *f.*	*Troy*, city in Asia Minor.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta[1] est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regŭlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis[2] capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepĕrant. 11. Scipio multas civitātes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accĭpit. 13. Lucem a sole accipĭmus. 14. Tuam[3] epistōlam accēpi. 15. Milĭtes tela jaciēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who[4] took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not[5] received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

---

[1] For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

[2] See Rule XXXII., page 26.

[3] What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

[4] Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quīs* or *quī?* See 188.

[5] Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound:*

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dōnec ĕris fēlix, multos nŭmĕrābis ămīcos; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. CLAUSES. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous,*" and (2) "*You will number many friends,*" are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends,* (when?) *so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members.*

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory.*

I. A Declarative Sentence has the form of an assertion:

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An Interrogative Sentence has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extīmescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. Interrogative Words. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num:*

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scrībitne,* Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes: Nonne scrībit,* Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no: Num scrībit,* Is he writing?

III. An Imperative Sentence has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty:

Justītiam cŏle, *Cultivate justice.* Cic.

IV. An Exclamatory Sentence has the form of an exclamation:

Rĕliquit quos vīros, *What heroes he has left!* Cic.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

Elements of Sentences.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The Subject, or that of which it speaks.

2. The Predicate, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluilius mōritur, *Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *morītur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers:

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mŏrītur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex,* is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris morītur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. Principal and Subordinate. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. Simple and Complex. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.[1]

Simple Subject.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

Rex[2] dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*[2] ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

Simple Predicate.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accūsātus,[3] *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. Tu es testis, *You are a witness.* Cic. Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective.*[4]

[1] Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius;* the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex;* the simple predicate, *morītur;* the complex, *in his castris morītur.*

[2] In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

[3] In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accusātus;* in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis;* and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est.*

[4] Thus *testis,* in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun,* and *caeca,* in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective.*

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.[1]

362. A Predicate Noun[2] denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,[2] *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

Exercise L.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amnĭs, amnĭs, *m.*	*river.*
Creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to create, make, elect.*
Graeciă, ae, *f.*	*Greece.*
Impĕrātŏr, impĕrātōrĭs, *m.*	*commander.*
Lătīnŭs, ī, *m.*	*Latinus*, Italian king.
Lāvīniă, ae, *f.*	*Lavinia*, a proper name.
Mălŭm, ī, *n.*	*evil.*
Nōmĭnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to call, name.*
Nŭmă, ae, *m.*	*Numa*, Roman king.
Rhēnŭs, ī, *m.*	*the Rhine*, river in Europe.
Serviŭs, iī, *m.*	*Servius*, Roman king.
Stultĭtiă, ae, *f.*	*folly.*
Tŭm, *adv.*	*then, at that time.*

[1] In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

[2] See 353, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *consul*[1] fuit.[2] 2. Cicĕro *orātor* fuit. 3. Cicĕro tum[3] erat[2] *orātor* clarissĭmus.[4] 4. Puer *orator* erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex[1] creātus est. 7. Cato imperātor fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperātor fuit. 9. Scipio consul creātus est. 10. Scipio consul fŭĕrat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtūtis. 13. Graecia artium[5] mater nominātur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*. 2. Rome was a beautiful *city*. 3. Cato was a wise *man*. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

APPOSITIVES.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive[6] agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex[6] mŏrītur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Urbes Carthāgo[6] atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

---

[1] Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

[2] For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

[3] Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

[4] See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

[5] *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 21.

[6] See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex, Carthāgo,* and *Numantia* are all Appositives.

Exercise LI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Alexandĕr, Alexandrī, *m.*	*Alexander*. the Great.
Conjux, conjŭgis, *m.* and *f.*	*wife, husband.*
Epirŭs, ī, *f.*	*Epirus*, country in Greece.
Erŭdītŭs, ă, ŭm,	*learned, instructed in.*
Hannŏ, Hannōnis, *m.*	*Hanno*, Carthaginian general.
Justŭs, ă, ŭm,	*just, upright.*
Măcĕdōnĭă, ae, *f.*	*Macedonia, Macedon.*
Nĕpōs, nĕpōtis, *m.*	*grandson.*
Paulŭs, ī, *m.*	*Paulus*, Roman consul.
Philippŭs, ī, *m.*	*Philip*, king of Macedon.
Pyrrhŭs, ī, *m.*	*Phyrrhus*, king of Epirus.
Vulnĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to wound.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro, eruditissĭmus *homo*,[1] consul[2] fuit. 2. Numa, justissĭmus *vir*, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae *nepos*,[1] rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.[3] 5. Pyrrhus, Epīri rex, vulnerātus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superāvit. 7. Paulus consul[1] regem superāvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonārum artium, nos erŭdit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Tullia, *the daughter*[1] of Servius, was the wife[2] of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

---

[1] Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

[2] Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

[3] See 222.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. Cases. — Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows:

I.	Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II.	Vocative,	Case of Address.
III.	Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV.	Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V.	Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI.	Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations.[1]

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative:

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. Subject Omitted. — See 460, 2, p. 54.

Exercise LII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Lībertās, lībertātis, *f.*	*liberty.*
Opŭlentŭs, ă, ŭm,	*rich, opulent.*
Quŏtidiē, *adv.*	*daily.*
Vĭtĭum, ĭi, *n.*	*fault, vice.*
Oppĭdum, ĭ, *n.*	*town, city.*

[1] This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*[1] liberāta[2] est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissĭma liberabĭtur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissĭma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudātur. 6. Virtūtes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudāta. 8. Libertas semper laudabĭtur. 9. Omnia hostium oppĭda expugnāta sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV. — Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli,[3] *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic. Quid est, Cātīlīna,[3] *Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi,[3] regnum. *The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv.

EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Auditŏr, auditōrĭs, *m.*	*hearer, auditor.*
Cārŭs, ā, ŭm,	*dear.*
Jŭvĕnĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*a youth, young man.*
Lēgātŭs, ī, *m.*	*ambassador.*
Sālūtō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	*to salute.*

[1] Subject of *liberāta est.* See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

[2] Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus?* See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

[3] *Laeli, Catilīna,* and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*, and *Servi*, for *Servie.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,[1] salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amīci*[1] carissīmi,[2] salūto. 3. Vos, *auditōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judices*, audite. 5. Haec verba, legāti, audīte. 6. Vos, milites, hanc urbem clarissĭmam custodīte. 7. Milĭtes[1] fortissĭmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtūtem, juvĕnes, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,[1] hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object[3] of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.*[4] Cic. Lĭbĕra rem publĭcam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pŏpŭli Rōmāni sălūtem dēfendīte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

---

[1] In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

[2] See 162.

[3] See *note* on Direct Object, p. 70.

[4] See *note* on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

Exercise LIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Flāmĭnĭŭs, ĭī, *m.*	*Flaminius*, Roman general.
Marcellŭs, ī, *m.*	*Marcellus*, Roman general.
Poenŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Carthaginian.*
Poenus, ī, *m.*	*a Carthaginian.*
Sanctŭs, ă, ŭm,	*holy, sacred.*
Sĭcĭlĭă, ae, *f.*	*Sicily*, the island of.
Spŏlĭo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to rob, spoil, despoil.*
Sўrācūsae, ārŭm, *f. plur.*	*Syracuse*, city in Sicily.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Alexander multas *urbes*[1] expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissĭma spoliavērunt. 5. Hannĭbal Flaminium[1] consŭlem[2] superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavĕrant. 7. Marcellus[3] magnam hujus insŭlae[4] partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,[1] nobilissĭmam urbem,[2] expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not[5] love your *parents*?[1] 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise virtue. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy[6] taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

---

[1] Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

[2] Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

[3] Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

[4] *Hujus insŭlae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

[5] See 346, II. 1.

[6] The Latin word must be in the plural.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative:

Rōmŭlus septem et trīginta regnāvit annos,[1] *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pĕdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant* Caes. Nix quattuor pĕdes[1] alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

EXERCISE LV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aggĕr, aggĕrĭs, *m.*	*mound, rampart.*
Ambŭlō, ārĕ, āvi, ātŭm,	*to walk.*
Centŭm,	*hundred.*
Glădiŭs, ĭi, *m.*	*sword.*
Lăcĕdaemōniŭs, ii, *m.*	*a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.*
Lātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*broad, wide.*
Longŭs, ă, ŭm,	*long.*
Mensĭs, mensīs, *m.*	*month.*
Nox, noctĭs, *f.*	*night.*
Octōgintā,	*eighty.*
Pēs, pĕdĭs, *m.*	*foot.*
Quinquāgintā,	*fifty.*
Regnō, ārĕ, āvi, ātŭm,	*to reign.*
Vĭgĭlō, ārĕ, āvi, ātŭm,	*to watch, be awake.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex *annos*[2] servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis *partem*[2] vigilavĕram. 3. Puer octo *horas*

[1] *Annos* denotes *Duration of Time*, while *millia* and *pedes* denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

[2] In the Accusative denoting Duration of Time. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormīvit. 4. Latīnus multos *annos* regnāvit. 5. In Italiā sex menses fuĭmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuĭmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes[1] latus fuit. 8. Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did you not walk two *hours?* 2. We walked three *hours.* 3. Did you not sleep six *hours?* 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rĕdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum[2] vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquĭnios,[2] *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

Exercise LVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēnae, ārŭm, *f. plur.*	*Athens*, capital of Attica.
Fŭgĭō, fŭgĕrĕ. fūgi, fŭgĭtŭm,	*to flee, fly, run away.*
Lўsandĕr, Lўsandrī, *m.*	*Lysander*, Spartan general.
Miltiādēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Miltiades*, Athenian general.
Nāvĭgō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to sail, sail to.*

[1] In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space.*

[2] *Romam, Tarentum,* and *Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion;* i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rĕdūcŏ, rĕdūcĕrĕ, rĕdūxī, rĕductŭm,	*to lead back.*
Rĕvŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to recall.*
Spartă, ae, *f.*	*Sparta*, capital of Laconia
Tărentŭm, ī, *n.*	*Tarentum*, Italian town.
Thēbānŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Theban.*
Thēbānŭs, ī, *m.*	*a Theban.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *Romam*[1] revocātus est. 2. Consŭles *Romam* revocāti sunt. 3. Hannĭbal *Carthagĭnem*[1] revocātus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*[1] navigāvit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugāvit. 7. Thebāni exercĭtum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiădes exercĭtum Athēnas reduxit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who fled *to Carthage?*[2] 2. Did not the enemy flee *to Carthage?* 3. They fled *to Carthage.* 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?[2] 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army to Athens.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

I. With Verbs.
II. With Adjectives.
III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. Indirect Object. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

[1] In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

[2] The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII. — Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempŏri [1] cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi tĭmuĕrant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lăbōri stŭdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis [1] vīta dăta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nŭmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Pons ĭter hostĭbus [2] dĕdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges cīvĭtātĭbus suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

EXERCISE LVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Carthăgĭniensĭs, ĕ,	*Carthaginian.*
Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.*	*a Carthaginian.*
Cōnŏn, Cŏnōnĭs, *m.*	*Conon*, Athenian gen'l.
Dēbeŏ, dēbērĕ, dēbuī, dēbĭtŭm,	*to owe.*
Displiceŏ, displĭcērĕ, displĭcuī, displĭcĭtŭm,	*to displease.*
Dōnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to give.*
Gens, gentĭs, *f.*	*race.*
Grātĭă, ae, *f.*	*favor, gratitude, thanks.*
Lăbōrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to strive for.*

---

[1] *Tempŏri, sibi,* and *labōri* are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cedit, timuĕrant* (intransitive here), and *student;* while *nobis* and *Numitōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *dedĭtur.*

[2] *Hostĭbus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter,* with the Transitive verb *dedit.* In the same way, *cĭvĭtatĭbus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges,* with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt.*

Monstrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to show, point out.*
Placeŏ, plācērĕ, plācuī, plăcītŭm,	*to please.*
Sĕnectūs, sĕnectūtĭs, *f.*	*old age.*
Sententiă, ae, *f.*	*opinion.*
Serviŏ, servīrĕ, servīvī, servītŭm,	*to serve.*
Viă, ae, *f.*	*way, road.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives *legĭbus*[1] parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitātes *Romānis* parēbant. 3. Haec sententia *Caesări*[1] placuit. 4. Illa sententia *Caesări* displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium Caesări nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostĭbus nuntiāta sunt. 8. *Tibi*[2] magnam *gratiam* habēmus. 9. Habeo *senectūti* magnam *gratiam*. 10. Conon pecuniam civĭbus donāvit. 11. Pastor puĕro viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensĭbus bellum indixērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did I not obey my[3] *father?*[1] 2. You obeyed your *father*. 3. We will obey *the laws* of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve *the king?* 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell *me* (to me[4]) *the truth?*[5] 9. I have told *you* (to you) *the truth*. 10. Will you show

[1] Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

[2] Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

[3] In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

[4] Dative. See Rule XII. II.

[5] Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way. 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13. They had declared war against the Romans.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae sōlum omnibus[1] cārum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. Id aptum est tempŏri, *This is adapted to the time.* Cic. Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, *Death is common to every age.* Cic. Cănis sīmilis lŭpo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. Nātūrae accommŏdātum, *Adapted to nature.* Cic. Graeciae ūtile, *Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE. — The most common are those signifying:

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amīcŭs, a, ŭm,	*friendly.*
Hispāniă, ae, *f.*	*Spain.*
Multĭtūdŏ, multĭtūdĭnĭs, *f.*	*multitude.*
Săguntŭm, ī, *n.*	*Saguntum*, city in Spain.
Sīmĭlis, ĕ,	*like.*
Sōlŭm, ī, *n.*	*soil.*
Vērĭtās, vērĭtātĭs, *f.*	*verity, truth.*

[1] Dative, showing *to whom* the soil is *dear*, — *dear* TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempŏri* is used with *aptum*, *aetāti* with *commūnis*, *lupo* with *simĭlis*, *natūrae* with *accommodātum*, and *Graeciae* with *ūtile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*[1] cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est. 3. Patria *tibi*[1] erit carissima. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum est. 5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romanis grata fuit. 7. Libertas multitudini grata est. 8. Veritas nobis gratissima est. 9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10. Saguntum Romanis amicum fuit. 11. Hannibal Saguntum,[2] Hispaniae civitatem[3] Romanis[4] amicam,[5] expugnavit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you?* 2. They are useful *to us.* 3. They will be useful *to you.* 4. This law has been useful to the state. 5. Will not this book be acceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me. 7. This book will be most acceptable[6] to my brother.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause;* but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

---

[1] Dative, according to Rule XIV.

[2] Accusative. See Rule V.

[3] Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

[4] Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

[5] *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 34.

[6] See 162.

Cātōnis[1] ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy.* Liv. Mors Hămilcăris, *The death of Hamilcar.* Liv. See 363.

Exercise LIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Commūnĭs, ĕ,	*common.*
Conscientiă, ae, *f.*	*consciousness.*
Dulcĭs, ĕ,	*sweet, pleasant.*
Hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs, *m.*	*honor.*
Orbĭs, orbĭs, *m.*	*circle, world.*
Orbĭs terrārūm,[2]	*the world.*
Parvŭs, ă, ŭm,	*small.*
Prinсĭpiūm, ĭī, *n.*	*beginning.*
Rectūm, ī, *n.*	*rectitude, right.*
Sōcrătēs, ĭs, *m.*	*Socrates*, Athenian philosopher.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Justitia *virtūtum*[3] regīna est. 2. Sapientia est mater omnium bonārum *artium.* 3. Socrātes parens *philosophiae* fuit. 4. Virtus veri *honōris*[4] mater est. 5. Patria commūnis[5] est omnium nostrum[6] parens. 6. Roma orbis[7] terrārum caput fuit. 7. Omnium rerum principia parva sunt. 8. Conscientia recti est praemium virtūtis dulcissĭmum.

---

[1] *Catōnis* qualifies *oratiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

[2] Literally *the circle of lands.*

[3] Genitive, depending upon *regīna.* Rule XVI.

[4] Genitive, depending upon *mater.*

[5] *Commūnis* agrees with *parens.* See Rule XXXIII.

[6] Genitive, depending upon *parens.*

[7] *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārum* upon *orbis.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations *of Cicero* are praised. 2. The courage *of the soldiers* saved the city. 3. The crown *of the king* was golden. 4. The sword of the general was beautiful. 5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state. 6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII. — Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avĭdus laudis,[1] *Desirous of praise.* Cic. Otii cŭpĭdus, *Desirous of leisure.* Liv. Amans sui virtus, *Virtue fond of itself.* Cic. Efficiens vŏluptātis, *Productive of pleasure.* Cic. Clōriae mĕmor, *Mindful of glory.* Liv.

1. Force of this Genitive. — The genitive here retains its usual force, — *of, in respect of,* — and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. Adjectives with the Genitive. — The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness,* and their contraries.

Exercise LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amans, ămantĭs,	*loving, fond of.*
Avĭdŭs, ă, ŭm,	*desirous of, eager for.*

[1] *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avĭdus; desirous* (of what?) *of praise.* It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupĭdus; sui,* of *amans; voluptātis,* of *efficiens;* and *gloriae,* of *memor.*

Certāmĕn, certāmĭnĭs, *n.*	*contest, strife, battle.*
Cŭpīdŭs, ă, ŭm,	*desirous of.*
Fons, fontĭs, *m.*	*fountain.*
Laus, laudĭs, *f.*	*praise.*
Nŏvĭtās, nŏvĭtātĭs, *f.*	*novelty.*
Pĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm,	*skilled in.*
Piscĭs, piscĭs, *m.*	*fish.*
Plēnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*full.*
Vŏluptās, vŏluptātĭs, *f.*	*pleasure.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Romāni avĭdi *gloriae*[1] fuĕrunt. 2. Homĭnes *novitātis* avīdi sunt. 3. Numa *pacis*[1] erat amantissĭmus.[2] 4. *Patriae* amantissīmi sumus. 5. Consul gloriae cupĭdus erat. 6. Cicĕro gloriae cupidissĭmus[2] fuit. 7. Milĭtes erant avidissĭmi certamĭnis. 8. Fons piscium plenissĭmus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissĭmi fuĕrunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Boys are fond *of praise.* 2. Are you not fond *of praise?* 3. We are fond *of praise.* 4. Were not the Athenians fond of pleasure? 5. They were always fond of pleasure. 6. They are desirous of glory. 7. Are you not desirous of a victory? 8. We are desirous of a victory.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

---

[1] Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

[2] See 162.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI. — Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means[1] are denoted by the Ablative:

Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, *An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. Glōriā dūcitur, *He is led by glory.* Cic. Duōbus mōdis fit, *It is done in two ways.* Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, *The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. Apri dentibus se tūtantur, *Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. Aeger ĕrat vulnĕribus, *He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. Laetus sorte tua, *Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE. — This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER. — This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*, — *mōre, ordĭne, rātiōne*, etc., — occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *With the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persārum, *In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum silentio audire, *To hear in silence.* Liv. Id ordine făcĕre, *To do it in order*, or *properly.* Cic.

---

[1] It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner,* and *Means.* Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means,* or both *Means* and *Manner.* Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness; *gloriā,* means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause; *modis,* manner; *luce,* means; *dentĭbus,* means; *vulnerĭbus,* cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means; and *sorte,* cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab:*

Occīsus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.*[1] Nep.

EXERCISE LXI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mūnŭs, mūnĕrĭs, *n.*	*reward, gift.*
Nātūrā, ae, *f.*	*nature.*
Pellĭs, pellĭs, *f.*	*skin, hide.*
Quŏtīdiānŭs, ă, ŭm,	*daily.*
Scўthae, ārum, *m. plur.*	*Scythians.*
Triumphŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to triumph.*
Usŭs, ūs, *m.*	*use.*
Vestiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.	*to clothe.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Consul *virtūte*[2] laudātus est. 2. Urbs *natūrā*[3] munīta erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Munerĭbus*[3] delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli virtūte est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulāri virtūte servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā[4] triumphāvit.[5] 9. Scythae corpŏra pellĭbus vestiēbant.

---

[1] By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the *person by whom* any thing is done from the *means by which* it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thebānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

[2] Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

[3] Ablative of Means.

[4] Ablative of Manner.

[5] The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers?*[1] 2. The fields are adorned *with* beautiful *flowers.* 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use?* 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.[2] 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est āmābĭlius virtūte,[3] *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est mĕlius bŏnĭtāte,[3] *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM[4] are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hĭbernia mĭnor quam Brĭtannia existĭmātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi[5] terrĭbilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

---

[1] Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

[2] Ablative of Cause.

[3] *Virtūte* and *bonitāte* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilius*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

[4] *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

[5] *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after* quam, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

Exercise LXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Argentŭm, ī. *n.*	*silver.*
Avārĭtĭă ae. *f.*	*avarice.*
Bŏnĭtās, bŏnĭtātĭs, *f.*	*goodness, excellence.*
Elŏquens, ēlŏquentĭs,	*eloquent.*
Ferrŭm, ī, *n.*	*iron.*
Foedŭs, ă, ŭm,	*detestable.*
Prĕtĭōsŭs, ă, ŭm,	*valuable.*
Quăm, *conj.*	*than.*
Scientĭă, ae, *f.*	*knowledge.*
Turrĭs, turrĭs, *f.*	*tower.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Virtus mihi [1] *gloriā* [2] est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā* [2] meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā?* 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā?* 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Animus corpŏre est nobilior. 7. Turris altior erat quam murus.[3] 8. Quid multitudĭnī [1] gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.[4] 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthĕnes?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron.*[2] 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold.* 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money.* 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than [5] knowledge. 7. Good-

[1] See Rule XIV. 391.

[2] Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

[3] In the same case as *turris*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

[4] Subject of *es* understood.

[5] In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done:

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation.*

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative: (45, 2).

I. Hannĭbal in Itălĭā[1] fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps.* Caes. In Appĭā viā, *On the Appian Way.* Cic. Ab urbe prōfĭcīscĭtur, *He departs from the city.* Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa.* Liv.

II. Athēnis[2] fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Bābўlōne mortuus est. *He died at Babylon.* Cic. Fūgit Cŏrintho, *He fled from Corinth.* Cic. Rōmae[2] fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

EXERCISE LXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

A, ăb, *prep. with abl.*	*from, by.*
Bābўlōn, Bābўlōnĭs, *f.*	*Babylon*, the city of.

[1] *In Italiā, in castris,* and *in viā* designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while *ab urbe* and *ex Africā* designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

[2] *Athēnis, Babylōne,* and *Corintho,* being names of towns, omit the preposition; while *Romae,* also the name of a town, is in the Locative, as it is in the Singular of the First declension. See 48, 4.

Cŏrinthŭs, ī, *f.*	*Corinth*, city in Greece.
Diŏnȳsiŭs, iī, *m.*	*Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
Hăbĭtō, āre, āvī, ātŭm,	*to dwell, reside.*
Hortŭs, ī, *m.*	*garden.*
Laetĭtiă, ae, *f.*	*joy.*
Lūcŭs, ī, *m.*	*grove.*
Rĕgiŏ, rĕgiōnĭs, *f.*	*region, territory.*
Sĕnātŏr, sĕnātōrĭs, *m.*	*senator.*
Trīgintā,	*thirty.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hannĭbal *in Hispaniā*[1] fuit. 2. Latīnus *in Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latīnus in illis regionĭbus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe[2] fugiēbant. 5. Themistŏcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses[3] *Athēnis*[4] fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis fugit. 9. Themistŏcles Athēnis fugit. 10. Athēnis habitābat. 11. Romŭlus *Romae*[5] regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not your father *in Italy?* 2. My father is *in Greece.* 3. Were you not in Greece? 4. We resided in Greece three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years *at Athens.* 10. Did he not reside at Carthage? 11. He resided four years at Carthage. 12. Did you not receive my letter *at Rome?* 13. I received your letter at Corinth.

---

[1] Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

[2] Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

[3] See Rule VIII.

[4] In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

[5] In the Locative, because it is the name of a *town*, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsĭmo anno[1] est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vēre convēnēre, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātāli die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hiĕme et aestāte, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.— Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mĕmŏriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

EXERCISE LXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Brūtus, ī, *m.*	*Brutus*, a Roman patriot.
Dēflăgrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to burn, be consumed.*
Diānā, ae, *f.*	*Diana*, a goddess.
Ephĕsiŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Ephesian, of Ephesus.*
Hiems, hiĕmis, *f.*	*winter.*
Nātālis, ĕ,	*belonging to one's birth, natal.*
Nātālis diēs,	*birth-day.*
Pompēiŭs, ī, *m.*	*Pompey*, Roman general.
Persae, ārŭm, *m. plur.*	*Persians.*
Scribŏ, scrībĕrĕ, scrīpsī, scriptŭm,	*to write.*
Tempŭs, tempŏris, *n.*	*time.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Natāli *die*[2] tuo scripsisti epistōlam. 2. Eōdem *die* epistōlam tuam accēpi.[3] 3. Pompēius urbem tertio *mense*

[1] *Anno, vere, die, hiĕme*, and *aestāte* are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

[2] Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

[3] From *accipio.*

cepit. 4. Eōdem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempōre miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were you not in Athens[1] *at* that *time?* 2. We were at Corinth[2] *at* that *time.* 3. Do you not reside in the city[1] *in winter?* 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome[2] on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad ămīcum[3] scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *Into the senate-house.* Liv. In Itălĭā, *In Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp.*

433. The Accusative is used with

Ad, adversus (adversun.), ante, ăpud, circa, circum, circĭter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pĕnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prŏpe, propter, sĕcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city.* Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods.* Cic.

434. The Ablative is used with

A *or* ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e *or* ex,	prae,	pro,	sĭne,	tĕnus:

[1] Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

[2] Locative. See Rule XXVI. II.

[3] The Accusative *amīcum* is here used with the preposition *ad; curiam.* with *in;* the Ablative *Italiā,* with *in.* See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

435. The Accusative or Ablative is used with

In, sub, subter, sŭper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannĭbal in Itălĭā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where:* In Asiam, (whither?) *into Asia;* In Itălĭā, (where?) *in Italy.*

Exercise LXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Adversŭs, *prep. with acc.*	*against.*
Dīmĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to fight.*
Pĕr, *prep. with acc.*	*of, through.*
Prospĕrē, *adv.*	*successfully.*
Prōvŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*to challenge.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospĕre pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Verĭtas per se[1] mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabĭlis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*[2] superāti sunt. 7. Cicĕro de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city?* 2. It has been led back to *the city.* 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me?* 7. I have received four letters from *you.* 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

---

[1] *Per se*, literally *through itself:* render *in itself* or *of itself.*

[2] *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. The preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.

2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.

3. A translation into English.

Meaning of the Latin.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense,* etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa,* a table, but not of *mensārum,* of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum.*

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.

2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case*, *number*, *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning. — that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *o* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *tis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus mensĭbus; stem *mensi*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So urb*em*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus amābat; stem *ama*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So amavērunt; First Pers. Perf. amāvi, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *ama*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistŏcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms*,

1) That *Themistŏcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistŏcles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: THEMISTOCLES.

2) That *libĕro*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means *to liberate:* LIBERATED.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander:* THE COMMANDER.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: GREECE.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all:* ALL.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servĭtus* means *servitude:* FROM SERVITUDE.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*[1] it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

Parsing.

XVII.[2] In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.

2. Inflect[3] it, if capable of inflection.

3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.[4]

4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.[5]

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

---

[1] It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

[2] These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

[3] Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

[4] That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

[5] For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 27, 34, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.

A.

A, ăb, *prep. with abl. From, by.*

Accĭpiŏ, accĭpĕrĕ, accēpī, acceptŭm. *To receive.*

Acĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ. *Sharp, severe, valiant.*

Aciēs, ăciēī, *f. Order of battle, battle-array, army.*

Ad, *prep. with acc. To, towards, near.*

Admĭnistrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To administer, manage.*

Admŏnĕŏ, admŏnērĕ, admŏnuī, admŏnĭtŭm. *To admonish.*

Adventūs, ūs, *m. Arrival, approach.*

Adversŭs, *prep. with acc. Against.*

Aedĭfĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To build.*

Aestās, aestātĭs, *f. Summer.*

Agĕr, ăgrī, *m. Field, land.*

Aggĕr, aggĕrĭs, *m. Mound, rampart.*

Agīs, Agīdĭs, *m. Agis*, a king of Sparta.

Albānŭs, ă, ŭm. *Alban.*

Alexandĕr, Alexandrī, *m. Alexander*, the Great.

Alĭquĭs, ălĭquă, ălĭquĭd or ălĭquŏd. *Some, some one.*

Altŭs, ă, ŭm. *High, lofty.*

Amans, ămantĭs. *Loving, fond of.*

Ambŭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To walk.*

Amīcĭtĭă, ae, *f. Friendship.*

Amīcŭs, ă, ŭm. *Friendly.*

Amīcŭs, ī, *m. Friend.*

Amnĭs, amnĭs, *m. River.*

Amŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To love.*

Amŏr, amōrĭs, *m. Love.*

Ampliŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To enlarge*

Ancŭs, ī, *m. Ancus*, a Roman king.

Anĭmăl. ănĭmālĭs, *n. Animal.*

Anĭmŭs, ī, *m. Soul, mind, passion, disposition.*

Annŭlŭs, ī, *m. Ring.*

Annŭs, ī, *m. Year.*

Antĕ, *prep. with acc. Before.*

Antĭquŭs, ă, ŭm. *Ancient.*

Apĭs, ăpĭs, *f. Bee.*

Appellŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To call.*

Appĕtens, appĕtentĭs. *Desiring, striving for.*

Apŭd, *prep. with acc. In the presence of, near, before, among.*

Apūlĭă, ae, *f. Apulia*, a country in Italy.

Arabs, Arăbĭs, *m* and *f. Arab, an Arab.*

Arctē, *adv. Closely, soundly.*

Argentŭm, ī, *n. Silver.*

Arŏ, ărārĕ, ărāvī, ărātŭm. *To plough.*

Arrŏgantiă, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*
Ars, artīs, *f.* *Art, skill.*
Artăxerxēs, īs, *m.* *Artaxerxes,* a Persian king.
Arx, arcīs, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*
Athēnae, ārŭm, *f. plur.* *Athens,* the capital of Attica.
Athēnĭensĭs, ĕ. *Athenian.*
Athēniensīs, īs, *m.* and *f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*
Attĭcŭs, ī, *m.* *Atticus,* a Roman name.
Audĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To hear.*
Audītŏr, audītōrīs, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*
Aureŭs, ă, ŭm. *Golden.*
Aurŭm, ī, n. *Gold.*
Avārĭtiă, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*
Avĭdŭs, ă, ŭm. *Desirous of, eager for.*
Avīs, ăvīs, *f.* *Bird.*

B.

Bābўlōn, Bābўlōnīs, *f.* *Babylon,* the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.
Bĕātŭs, ă, ŭm. *Happy, blessed.*
Bellŭm, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*
Bĕnĕ, *adv.* *Well.*
Bĕnignē, *adv.* *Kindly.*
Bŏnĭtās, bŏnĭtātīs, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*
Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm. *Good.*
Brĕvīs, ĕ. *Short, brief.*
Brūtŭs, ī, *m.* *Brutus,* a celebrated Roman patriot.

C.

Caesăr, Caesărīs, *m.* *Cæsar,* a celebrated Roman commander.
Cāĭŭs, ĭī, *m.* *Caius,* a proper name.
Cămillŭs, ī, *m.* *Camillus,* a Roman general.
Campŭs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*
Cānīs, cānīs. *m.* and *f.* *Dog.*
Cantŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To sing.*
Cantŭs, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*
Căpĭŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm. *To take, capture.*
Căpŭt, căpĭtĭs, *n.* *Head, capital.*
Carmĕn, carmĭnīs, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*
Carthāgĭnĭensĭs, ĕ. *Carthaginian.*
Carthāgĭnĭensīs, īs, *m.* and *f.* *A Carthaginian.*
Carthāgŏ, Carthāgĭnīs, *f.* *Carthage,* a city of Northern Africa.
Carthāgŏ Nŏvă. *New Carthage, Carthagena,* a city of Spain.
Cārŭs, ă, ŭm. *Dear.*
Cătŏ, Cătōnīs, *m.* *Cato,* a distinguished Roman.
Centŭm. *One hundred.* See 176.
Certāmĕn, certāmĭnīs, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*
Cĭbŭs, ī, *m.* *Food.*
Cĭcĕrō, Cĭcĕrōnīs, *m.* *Cicero,* the celebrated Roman orator.
Cīvĭlīs, ĕ. *Civil.*
Cīvīs, cīvīs, *m.* and *f.* *Citizen.*
Cīvĭtās, cīvĭtātīs, *f.* *State, city.*
Clārŭs, ă, ŭm. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*
Classīs, classīs, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*
Coercĕŏ, coercērĕ, coercuī, coercĭtŭm. *To check.*
Cŏlŏ, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm. *To practise, cultivate.*
Commŭnīs ĕ. *Common.*
Condemnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To condemn.*
Condĭtŏr, condĭtōrīs, *m.* *Founder.*
Conjux, conjŭgīs, *m.* and *f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*

Cŏnōn, Cŏnōnĭs, *m.* *Conon*, an Athenian general.
Conscientiă, ae, *f.* *Consciousness.*
Consĭlĭŭm, ĭī, *n.* *Design, plan.*
Conspectŭs, ūs, *m.* *Sight, view, presence.*
Consŭl, consŭlĭs, *m.* *Consul.*
Contrā, *prep. with acc.* *Against, opposite to, contrary to.*
Convŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To assemble, call together.*
Cŏrinthŭs, ī, *f.* *Corinth*, city in Greece.
Cornēlĭŭs, ĭī, *m.* *Cornelius*, a Roman name.
Cŏrōnă, ae, *f.* *Crown.*
Corpŭs, corpŏrĭs, *n.* *Body, person.*
Creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To create, make, appoint, elect.*
Crūdēlĭs, ĕ. *Cruel.*
Crūdŭs, ă, ŭm. *Unripe.*
Culpŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To blame.*
Cŭm, *prep. with abl.* *With.*
Cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm. *Desirous of.*
Cŭrēs, Cŭrĭŭm, *m. plur.* *Cures*, a Sabine town.
Custōdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To guard.*
Custōs, custōdĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Keeper, guard.*

D.

Dē, *prep. with abl.* *Concerning.*
Dēbeŏ, dēbērĕ, dēbuī, dēbĭtŭm. *To owe.*
Dĕcĕm. *Ten.* See 176.
Dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm. *Tenth.*
Dēfectiŏ, dēfectiōnĭs, *f.* *Eclipse.*
Dēflāgrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To burn, be consumed.*
Dēlectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To delight, please.*
Dēmărātŭs, ī, *m.* *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.
Dēmosthĕnēs, ĭs, *m.* *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.
Diānă, ae, *f.* *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.
Dīcŏ, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm. *To say, speak, tell.*
Diēs, diēī, *m.* *Day.* See 120, note.
Dĭlĭgens, dĭlĭgentĭs. *Diligent.*
Dĭlĭgentiă, ae, *f.* *Diligence.*
Dīmĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To fight.*
Diŏnўsiŭs, ĭī, *m.* *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
Discĭpŭlŭs, ī, *m.* *Pupil.*
Dĭsertē, *adv.* *Clearly, eloquently.*
Displĭceŏ, displĭcērĕ, displĭcuī, displĭcĭtŭm. *To displease.*
Dīvīnŭs, ă, ŭm. *Divine.*
Dŏlŏr, dŏlōrĭs, *m.* *Pain, grief, suffering.*
Dōnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To give, present.*
Dōnŭm, ī, *n.* *Gift.*
Dormiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To sleep.*
Drăcŏ, Drăcōnĭs, *m.* *Draco.* an Athenian lawgiver.
Dŭcentī, ae, ă. *Two hundred.*
Dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm. *To lead.*
Dulcĭs, ĕ. *Sweet, pleasant.*
Duŏ, ae, ŏ. *Two.* See 175.
Dŭplĭcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To double, increase.*
Dux, dŭcĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Leader, general.*

E.

E, ex, *prep. with abl.* *From.*
Ebrĭctās, ēbrĭctātĭs, *f.* *Drunkenness.*
Edūcŏ, ēdūcĕrĕ, ēduxī, ēductum. *To lead forth, lead out.*
Effŭgiŏ, effŭgĕrĕ, effūgī, effŭgĭtŭm. *To escape.*
Egŏ, meī. *I.* See 184.

Egrĕgiŭs, ă, ŭm. *Distinguished.*
Egrĕgiē, *adv.* *Excellently.*
Elĕphantŭs, ī, *m.* *Elephant.*
Elŏquens, ēlŏquentĭs. *Eloquent.*
Elŏquentiă, ae, *f.* *Eloquence.*
Ephĕsiŭs, ă, ŭm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*
Epīrŭs, ī, *f.* *Epirus,* a country in Greece.
Epistŏlă, ae, *f.* *Letter.*
Erŭdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To instruct, refine, educate.*
Erŭdītŭs, ă, ŭm. *Learned, instructed in.*
Ex, *prep. with abl.* *From.*
Exercĕŏ, exercēre. exercuī, exercĭtŭm. *To exercise, train.*
Exercĭtŭs, ūs, *m.* *Army.*
Expugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To take, take by storm.*
Exspectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To await, expect.*
Exsŭl, exsŭlĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Exile.*

F.

Făciēs, făciēī, *f.* *Face, appearance.*
Ferrŭm, ī, *n.* *Iron.*
Fertĭlĭs, ĕ. *Fertile.*
Fĭdēlĭtās, fĭdēlĭtātĭs, *f.* *Fidelity, faithfulness.*
Fĭdēs, fĭdēī, *f.* *Faith, fidelity.*
Fīdŭs, ă, ŭm. *Faithful.*
Fīliă, ae, *f.* *Daughter.*
Fīliŭs, iī, *m.* *Son.*
Fīniŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To finish, bring to a close.*
Fīnīs, fīnĭs, *m.* *Limit, territory.*
Firmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To strengthen, confirm.*
Flāmĭniŭs, iī, *m.* *Flaminius,* a Roman general.
Flōs, flōrĭs, *m.* *Flower.*
Foedŭs, ă, ŭm. *Detestable.*
Fons, fontĭs, *m.* *Fountain.*
Fortĭs, ĕ. *Brave.*
Fortĭtĕr, *adv.* *Bravely.*
Fortĭtūdŏ, fortĭtūdĭnĭs, *f.* *Bravery, fortitude.*
Fossă, ae, *f.* *Ditch, moat.*
Frātĕr, frātrĭs, *m.* *Brother.*
Fructŭs, ūs, *m.* *Fruit, produce, income.*
Frūmentŭm, ī, *n.* *Corn, grain.*
Fŭgă, ae, *f.* *Flight.*
Fŭgiŏ, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm. *To flee, fly, run away.*
Fŭgŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To rout, drive away.*
Fūnestŭs, ă, ŭm. *Destructive.*
Fŭrŏr, fŭrōrĭs, *m.* *Madness, insanity.*

G.

Gallŭs, ī, *m.* *Gallus,* a proper name.
Gallŭs, ī, *m.* *Gaul, a Gaul,* an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.
Gemmă, ae, *f.* *Gem.*
Gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, *m.* *Son-in-law.*
Gens, gentĭs, *f.* *Race.*
Germānĭă, ae, *f.* *Germany.*
Glădiŭs, iī, *m.* *Sword.*
Glŏbōsŭs, ă, ŭm. *Spherical.*
Glōriă, ae, *f.* *Glory.*
Graeciă, ae, *f.* *Greece.*
Graecŭs, ă, ŭm. *Grecian, Greek.*
Graecŭs, ī, *m.* *Greek, a Greek.*
Grātiă, ae, *f.* *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*
Grātŭs, ă, ŭm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*
Grex, grĕgĭs, *m.* *Herd, flock.*

H.

Hăbeŏ, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, hăbĭtŭm. *To have, hold.*
Hăbĭtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannĭbăl, Hannĭbălĭs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.

Hannŏ, Hannōnĭs, *m.* *Hanno*, a Carthaginian general.

Hastă, ae, *f.* *Spear.*

Hĭc, haec, hŏc. *This.*

Hiems, hiĕmĭs, *f.* *Winter.*

Hĭrundŏ, hĭrundĭnĭs, *f.* *Swallow.*

Hispānĭă, ae, *f.* *Spain.*

Hispānŭs, ī, *m.* *A Spaniard.*

Hŏmērŭs, ī, *m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.

Hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs, *m.* *Man.*

Hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs, *m.* *Honor.*

Hōră, ae, *f.* *Hour.*

Hostĭs, hostĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Enemy.*

I.

Idĕm, eădĕm, ĭdĕm. *Same, the same.* See 186.

Ignōrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To be ignorant of, not to know.*

Illĕ, illă, illŭd. *That, he, she, it.* See 186.

Illustrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To illustrate, illumine.*

Imāgŏ, ĭmāgĭnĭs, *f.* *Image, picture.*

Impătiens, impătientĭs. *Impatient.*

Impĕrātŏr, impĕrātōrĭs, *m.* *Commander.*

Impĕrĭŭm, ĭī, *n.* *Reign, power, government.*

Impĕtŭs, ūs, *m.* *Attack.*

Improbĭtās, improbĭtātĭs, *f.* *Wickedness.*

In, *prep. with acc.* and *abl.* *Into, in, within.*

Incertŭs, ă, ŭm. *Uncertain.*

Indīcŏ, indīcĕrĕ, indixī, indictŭm. *To declare.*

Infestŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To infest.*

Ingens, ingentĭs. *Huge, large, great.*

Innŏcens, innocentĭs. *Innocent.*

Insānĭă, ae, *f.* *Insanity.*

Insŭlă, ae, *f.* *Island.*

Intĕr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, among, in the midst of.*

Intrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To enter.*

Inventŏr, inventōrĭs, *m.* *Inventor.*

Invītŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To invite.*

Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm. *Self, he, himself.* See 186.

Is, eă, ĭd. *That, he, she, it.*

Istĕ, istă, istŭd. *That, such.* See 186.

Itălĭă, ae, *f.* *Italy.*

J.

Jăcĭŏ, jăcĕrĕ, jēcī, jactŭm. *To cast, throw, hurl.*

Jăm, *adv.* *Now, already.*

Jūcundŭs, ă, ŭm. *Delightful, pleasant.*

Jūdex, jūdĭcĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Judge.*

Jungŏ, jungĕrĕ, junxī, junctŭm. *To join.*

Justĭtiă, ae, *f.* *Justice.*

Justŭs, ă, ŭm. *Upright, just.*

Jŭvĕnĭs, jŭvĕnĭs, *m.* and *f.* *A youth, young man.*

Jŭventŭs, jŭventūtĭs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person.*

L.

Lăbŏr, lăbōrĭs, *m.* *Labor.*

Lăbōrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To strive for, labor, work.*

Lăcĕdaemŏnĭŭs, ĭī, *m.* *Spartan, a Spartan*, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.

Laetĭtiă, ae, *f.* *Joy.*

Lăpĭs, lăpĭdĭs, *m.* *Stone.*

Lătīnē, *adv.* *In Latin.*

Lătīnŭs, ī, *m.* *Latinus*, a Latin king.

Lātŭs, ă, ŭm. *Broad.*

Laudābĭlĭs, e. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*
Laudō, āre, āvī, ātŭm. *To praise.*
Laus, laudĭs, *f.* *Praise.*
Lāvīnĭă, æ, *f.* *Lavinia*, a proper name.
Lēgātĭō, lēgātiōnĭs, *f.* *Embassy.*
Lēgātŭs, ī, *m.* *Ambassador.*
Lĕgĭŏ, lĕgiōnĭs, *f.* *Legion*, a body of soldiers.
Lĕgō, lĕgĕre, lēgī, lectŭm. *To choose, appoint.*
Leō, leōnĭs, *m.* *Lion.*
Lētālĭs, e. *Mortal, deadly.*
Lex, lēgĭs, *f.* *Law.*
Lĭbĕr, librī, *m.* *Book.*
Lĭbĕrō, āre, āvī, ātŭm. *To liberate.*
Lĭbertās, lĭbertātĭs, *f.* *Liberty.*
Longŭs, ă, ŭm. *Long.*
Lūcŭs, ī, *m.* *Grove.*
Lūnă, æ, *f.* *Moon.*
Luscĭnĭă, æ, *f.* *Nightingale.*
Lux, lūcĭs, *f.* *Light.*
Luxŭrĭă, æ, *f.* *Luxury.*
Lўcurgŭs, ī, *m.* *Lycurgus*, a Spartan lawgiver.
Lўsandĕr, Lўsandrī, *m.* *Lysander*, a Spartan general.

M.

Măcĕdŏnĭă, æ, *f.* *Macedonia, Macedon*, a country of Northern Greece.
Măgistĕr, măgistrī, *m.* *Master, teacher.*
Magnŏpĕrĕ, *adv.* *Greatly.*
Magnŭs, ă, ŭm. *Great, large.*
Mălŭm, ī, *n.* *Evil.*
Marcellŭs, ī, *m.* *Marcellus*, a celebrated Roman general.
Mărĕ, mărĭs, *n.* *Sea.*
Mātĕr, mātrĭs, *f.* *Mother.*
Mātūrŭs, ă, ŭm. *Ripe.*
Mĕmŏrĭă, æ, *f.* *Memory.*
Mensă, æ, *f.* *Table.*
Mensis, mensĭs, *m.* *Month.*
Mercēs, mercēdĭs, *f.* *Reward.*
Mĕrĕŏ, mĕrērĕ, mĕruī, mĕrĭtŭm. *To deserve, merit.*
Meŭs, ă, ŭm. *My.* See 185.
Mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs, *m.* *Soldier.*
Miltĭădēs, ĭs, *m.* *Miltiades*, an Athenian general.
Mŏdestĭă, æ, *f.* *Modesty.*
Mŏnĕŏ, mŏnērĕ, mŏnuī, mŏnĭtŭm. *To advise.*
Mons, montĭs, *m.* *Mountain.*
Monstrŏ, āre, āvī, ātŭm. *To show, point out.*
Mōră, æ, *f.* *Delay.*
Mors, mortĭs, *f.* *Death.*
Multĭtūdŏ, multĭtūdĭnĭs, *f.* *Multitude.*
Multŭs, ă, ŭm. *Much, many.*
Mundŭs, ī, *m.* *World, universe.*
Mūnĭŏ, īre, īvī, ītŭm. *To fortify, defend.*
Mūnŭs, mūnĕrĭs, *n.* *Gift, present.*
Mūrŭs, ī, *m.* *Wall.*
Mūtātĭŏ, mūtātiōnĭs, *f.* *Change, phase.*

N.

Nātālĭs, e. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*
Nātālĭs dĭēs. *Birth-day.*
Nātūră, æ, *f.* *Nature.*
Nāvālĭs, e. *Naval.*
Nāvĭgŏ, āre, āvī, ātŭm. *To sail to.*
Nāvĭs, nāvĭs, *f.* *Ship.*
Nĕcessārĭŭs, ă. ŭm. *Necessary.*
Nĕcessĭtās, nĕcessĭtātĭs, *f.* *Necessity.*
Nĕpōs, nĕpōtĭs, *m.* *Grandson.*
Nōbĭlĭs, e. *Noble.*
Nōmĕn, nōmĭnĭs, *n.* *Name.*
Nōmĭnŏ, āre, āvī, ātŭm. *To call, name.*

Nōn, *adv.* *Not.*

Nonnĕ, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *Yes.* See 346, II., 2.

Nostĕr, nostrā, nostrŭm. *Our, our own, ours.*

Nŏvĭtās, nŏvĭtātĭs, *f.* *Novelty.*

Nŏvŭs, ă, ŭm. *New.*

Nox, noctĭs, *f.* *Night.*

Nūbēs, nūbĭs, *f.* *Cloud.*

Nŭm, *interrog. part.* Expects the answer, *No.* See 346, II., 1.

Nŭmă, ae, *m.* *Numa*, a Roman king.

Nŭmĕrŭs, ī, *m.* *Number, quantity.*

Nummŭs, ī, *m.* *Money, a piece of money, a coin.*

Nuntiŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To proclaim, announce.*

O.

Obsĕs, obsĭdĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Hostage.*

Occāsŭs, ūs, *m.* *Setting, going down.*

Occŭpŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To occupy, take possession of.*

Octāvŭs, ă, ŭm. *Eighth.*

Octŏ. *Eight.* See 176.

Octōgintā. *Eighty.* See 176.

Oculŭs, ī, *m.* *Eye.*

Odiōsŭs, ă, ŭm. *Odious, hateful.*

Omnīs, ĕ. *All, every, whole.*

Oppĭdŭm, ī, *n.* *Town, city.*

Oppugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To besiege, take by storm.*

Optŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To wish for, desire.*

Opŭlentŭs, ă, ŭm. *Rich, opulent.*

Opŭs, ŏpĕrĭs, *n.* *Work.*

Orātiŏ, ōrātiōnĭs, *f.* *Oration, speech.*

Orātŏr, ōrātōrĭs, *m.* *Orator.*

Orbĭs, orbĭs, *m.* *Circle.*

Orbĭs terrārŭm. *The world.*

Ornŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To adorn, be an ornament to.*

Ovĭs, ŏvĭs, *f.* *Sheep.*

P.

Părens, părentĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Parent.*

Pārĕŏ, pārērĕ, pāruī, pārĭtŭm. *To obey.*

Pars, partĭs, *f.* *Part, portion.*

Parvŭs, ă, ŭm. *Small.*

Passĕr, passĕrĭs, *m.* *Sparrow.*

Pastŏr, pastōrĭs, *m.* *Shepherd.*

Pătĕr, pătrĭs, *m.* *Father.*

Pătriă, ae, *f.* *Native country, country.*

Paulŭs, ī, *m.* *Paulus*, a Roman consul.

Pax, pācĭs, *f.* *Peace.*

Pĕcūniă, ae, *f.* *Money.*

Pellĭs, pellĭs, *f.* *Skin, hide.*

Pĕr, *prep. with acc.* *Of, through.*

Pĕrăgrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To wander through.*

Pĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm. *Skilled in.*

Persă, ae, *m.* *A Persian.*

Pēs, pĕdĭs, *m.* *Foot.*

Philippŭs, ī, *m.* *Philip*, king of Macedon.

Philŏsŏphiă, ae, *f.* *Philosophy.*

Philŏsŏphŭs, ī, *m.* *Philosopher.*

Piĕtās, piĕtātĭs, *f.* *Filial affection, piety, duty.*

Pīrātă, ae, *m.* *Pirate.*

Piscĭs, piscĭs, *m.* *Fish.*

Pisistrătŭs, ī, *m.* *Pisistratus*, tyrant of Athens.

Plăceŏ, plăcērĕ, plăcuī, plăcĭtŭm. *To please.*

Plēnŭs, ă, ŭm. *Full.*

Poenŭs, ă, ŭm. *Carthaginian.*

Poenus, ī, *m.* *A Carthaginian.*

Pōmŭm, ī, *n.* *Fruit.*

Pompīliŭs, iī, *m.* *Pompilius*, a Roman name.

Pompēiŭs, iī, *m.* *Pompey*, a celebrated Roman general.

Pondŭs, ponderĭs, *n.* *Weight, mass.*

Portŭs, ūs, *m.* *Port, harbor.*
Post, *prep. with acc.* *After.*
Pŏtens, pŏtentĭs. *Powerful, able.*
Praebeō, praebērĕ, praebuī, praebĭtŭm. *To show, furnish, give.*
Praeceptŏr, praeceptōrĭs, *m.* *Teacher, instructor.*
Praeceptŭm, ī, *n.* *Rule, precept.*
Praeclārŭs, ă, ŭm. *Renowned, distinguished.*
Praedīcō, praedīcĕrĕ, praedixī, praedictŭm. *To predict, foretell.*
Praemiŭm, iī, *n.* *Reward.*
Prātŭm, ī, *n.* *Meadow.*
Prĕtiōsŭs, ă, ŭm. *Valuable.*
Prīmŭs, ă, ŭm. *First.*
Princīpiŭm, iī, *n.* *Beginning.*
Prō, *prep. with abl.* *In behalf of, for.*
Proeliŭm, iī, *n.* *Battle.*
Prospĕrē, *adv.* *Successfully.*
Prōvŏcō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To challenge.*
Prūdentiă, ae, *f.* *Prudence.*
Publiŭs, iī, *m.* *Publius*, a Roman name.
Puellă, ae, *f.* *Girl.*
Pŭer, pŭerī, *m.* *Boy.*
Pugnă, ae, *f.* *Battle.*
Pugnō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To fight.*
Pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm. *Beautiful.*
Pūnĭcŭs, ă, ŭm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*
Pyrrhŭs, ī, *m.* *Pyrrhus*, a king of Epirus.

Q.

Quăm, *conj.* *Than.*
Quartŭs, ă, ŭm. *Fourth.*
Quattuōr. *Four.* See 176.
Quī, quae, quŏd, *rel. pronoun.* *Who, which, what.* See 187.
Quinquāgintā. *Fifty.* See 176.
Quinquĕ. *Five.* See 176.
Quintŭs, ă, ŭm. *Fifth.*
Quīs, quae, quĭd? *interrog. pronoun.* *Who, which, what?* See 188.
Quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs, *or* quidvīs, *indef. pronoun.* *Whoever, whatever.* See 190.
Quŏtīdiānŭs, ă, ŭm. *Daily.*
Quŏtīdiĕ, *adv.* *Daily.*

R.

Rāmŭs, ī, *m.* *Branch.*
Rătiŏ, rătiōnīs, *f.* *Reason.*
Rectē, *adv.* *Rightly.*
Rectŭm, ī, *n.* *Right, rectitude.*
Rĕdūcŏ, rĕdūcĕrĕ, rĕduxī, rĕductŭm. *To lead back.*
Rēgīnă, ae, *f.* *Queen.*
Rĕgiŏ, rĕgiōnīs, *f.* *Region, territory.*
Rēgŭlŭs, ī, *m.* *Regulus*, a Roman general.
Regnō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To reign.*
Regnŭm, ī, *n.* *Kingdom, royal authority.*
Rĕgŏ, rĕgĕrĕ, rexī, rectŭm. *To rule.*
Rĕnŏvŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To renew.*
Rēs, reī, *f* *Thing, affair.*
Rēs pūblĭcă. *Republic.*
Rĕvŏcō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To recall.*
Rex, rēgĭs, *m.* *King.*
Rhēnŭs, ī, *m.* *Rhine.*
Rōmă, ae, *f.* *Rome.*
Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm. *Roman.*
Rōmānŭs, ī, *m.* *Roman, a Roman.*
Rōmŭlŭs, ī, *m.* *Romulus*, the founder of Rome.

S.

Sāguntŭm, ī, *n.* *Saguntum*, a town in Spain.

Sālūs, sālūtīs, *f.* *Safety.*
Sālūtārīs, ĕ. *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*
Sālūtō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To salute.*
Sanctŭs, ă, ŭm. *Holy, sacred.*
Săpiens, săpientīs. *Wise.*
Săpientĕr, *adv.* *Wisely.*
Săpientiă, ae, *f.* *Wisdom.*
Schŏlă, ae, *f.* *School.*
Scientiă, ae, *f.* *Knowledge.*
Scīpiŏ, Scīpiōnīs, *m.* *Scipio*, a distinguished Roman.
Scrībō, scrībĕrĕ, scripsī, scriptŭm. *To write.*
Scȳthae, ārŭm, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*
Sĕcundŭs, ă, ŭm. *Second, favorable.*
Sempĕr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*
Sĕnātŏr, sĕnātōrīs, *m.* *Senator.*
Sĕnātŭs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*
Sĕnectŭs, sĕnectūtīs, *f.* *Old age.*
Sensŭs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*
Sententiă, ae, *f.* *Opinion.*
Sermŏ, sermōnīs, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*
Serviŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To serve.*
Serviŭs, iī, *m.* *Servius*, a Roman proper name.
Servō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To preserve, keep, save.*
Servŭs, ī, *m.* *Slave.*
Sex. *Six.* See 176.
Sĭcĭlĭă, ae, *f.* *Sicily.*
Sīlentiŭm, iī, *n.* *Silence.*
Sīmīlīs, ĕ. *Like.*
Singŭlārīs, ĕ. *Remarkable, singular.*
Sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, *m.* *Father-in-law.*
Sŏciŭs, iī, *m.* *Ally, associate.*
Sōcrătēs, īs, *m.* *Socrates*, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.
Sōl, sōlīs, *m.* *Sun.*
Sōlōn, Sōlōnīs, *m.* *Solon*, an Athenian legislator.
Sŏlŭm, ī, *n.* *Soil.*
Spartă, ae, *f.* *Sparta*, capital of Laconia.
Spĕciēs, spĕciēī, *f.* *Appearance.*
Spērŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To hope.*
Spēs, spēī, *f.* *Hope.*
Spŏliŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*
Stĭmŭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To stimulate.*
Stultĭtiă, ae, *f.* *Folly.*
Suī, sĭbĭ. *Himself, herself, itself.* See 134.
Sŭm, essĕ, fuī. *To be.* See 204.
Sŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To conquer.*
Supplĭciŭm, iī, *n.* *Punishment.*
Suŭs, ă, ŭm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*
Sȳrācūsae, ārŭm, *f. plur.* *Syracuse*, a city of Sicily.

T.

Tăceŏ, tăcērĕ, tăcuī, tăcĭtŭm. *To be silent.*
Tārentŭm, ī, *n.* *Tarentum*, an Italian town.
Tarquīniŭs, iī, *m.* *Tarquin*, a Roman king.
Tēlŭm, ī, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*
Tĕmĕrĭtās, tĕmĕrĭtātīs, *f.* *Rashness.*
Templŭm, ī, *n.* *Temple.*
Tempŭs, tempŏrĭs, *n.* *Time.*
Terră, ae, *f.* *Land, earth.*
Terreŏ, terrērĕ, terruī, territŭm. *To frighten, terrify.*
Tertiŭs, ă, ŭm. *Third.*
Thālēs, īs, *m.* *Thales*, a Grecian philosopher.
Thēbānŭs, ă, ŭm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes* (a city in Greece).

Thēbānŭs, ī, *m.* *A Theban.*
Thĕmistŏclēs, īs, *m.* *Themistocles*, a celebrated Athenian.
Thrăsÿbūlŭs, ī, *m.* *Thrasybulus*, the liberator of Athens.
Tĭcīnŭs, ī, *m.* *Ticinus*, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.
Trēs, triă. *Three.* See 175.
Trīgintā. *Thirty.* See 176.
Triumphŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To triumph.*
Trōjă, ae, *f.* *Troy*, ancient city in Asia Minor.
Tū, tuī. *Thou, you.* See 184.
Tullĭă, ae, *f.* *Tullia*, a Roman proper name.
Tullŭs, ī, *m.* *Tullus*, a Roman king.
Tŭm, *adv.* *Then, at that time.*
Turrĭs, turrīs, *f.* *Tower.*
Tuŭs, ă, ŭm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*
Tÿrannŭs, ī, *m.* *Tyrant.*
Tÿrĭŭs, ă, ŭm. *Tyrian.*

U.

Ulyssēs, īs, *m.* *Ulysses*, a Grecian king.
Unĭversŭs, ă, ŭm. *All, the whole, entire.*
Unŭs, ă, ŭm. *One.* See 175.
Urbs, urbĭs, *f.* *City.*
Usŭs, ūs, *m.* *Use.*
Utīlĭs, ĕ. *Useful.*

V.

Vălētūdŏ, vălētūdĭnĭs, *f.* *Health.*
Vărĭĕtās, vărĭĕtātĭs, *f.* *Variety.*
Vărĭŭs, ă, ŭm. *Various.*
Varrŏ, varrōnĭs, *m.* *Varro*, a Roman consul.
Vēr, vērĭs, *n.* *Spring.*
Verbŭm, ī, *n.* *Word.*
Vĕrĕcundiă, ae, *f.* *Modesty.*
Vērĭtās, vērĭtātĭs, *f.* *Truth, verity.*
Vērŭs, ă, ŭm. *True, real.*
Vērŭm, ī. *n.* *Truth.*
Vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm. *Your.*
Vestiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm. *To clothe.*
Viă, ae, *f.* *Way, road.*
Victŏr, victōrĭs, *m.* *Victor, conqueror.*
Victōriă, ae, *f.* *Victory.*
Victōriă, ae, *f.* *Victoria*, Queen of England.
Vĭgĭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To watch, be awake.*
Vīlĭs, ĕ. *Cheap.*
Vindex, vindĭcĭs, *m.* and *f.* *Vindicator, avenger.*
Vĭŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To violate.*
Vĭr, vīrī, *m.* *Man, hero, soldier.*
Virgŏ, virgĭnĭs, *f.* *Maiden, girl.*
Virtūs, virtūtĭs, *f.* *Valor, virtue.*
Vītă, ae, *f.* *Life.*
Vĭtiŭm, iī, *n.* *Fault, vice.*
Vĭtŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*
Vivŏ, vīvĕrĕ, vixī, victŭm. *To live, reside.*
Vŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To call.*
Vŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To fly.*
Vŏluntāriŭs, ă, ŭm. *Voluntary.*
Vŏluptās, vŏluptātĭs, *f.* *Pleasure.*
Vox, vōcĭs, *f.* *Voice.*
Vulnĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm. *To wound.*
Vulnŭs, vulnĕrĭs, *n.* *Wound.*
Vultŭr, vultūrĭs, *m.* *Vulture.*
Vultŭs, ūs, *m.* *Countenance.*

X.

Xerxēs, īs, *m.* *Xerxes*, a Persian king.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A, an. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.

Acceptable. *Grātŭs, ă, ŭm.*

Admonish. *Admŏneŏ, admŏnērĕ, admŏnŭī, admŏnĭtŭm.*

Adorned. *Ornātŭs, ă, ŭm.*

Advise. *Mŏneŏ, mŏnērĕ, mŏnŭī, mŏnĭtŭm.*

After. *Post*, prep. with acc.

Against. *Contrā*, prep. with acc. Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

Alexander. *Alexandĕr, Alexandrī*, m.

All. *Omnĭs, ĕ.*

Always. *Sempĕr*, adv.

Announce. *Nuntĭŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Appoint. *Creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Army. *Exercĭtŭs, ūs*, m.

Arrival. *Adventŭs, ūs*, m.

At. *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time.* See 421 and 426.

Athenian. *Athēnĭensĭs, ĕ.*

Athenian, an Athenian. *Athēnĭensĭs, ĭs*, m. *and* f.

Athens. *Athēnae, ārŭm*, f. plur.

Attack. *Impĕtŭs, ūs*, m.

Await. *Exspectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

B.

Battle. *Proelĭŭm, ĭī*, n.

Battle-array. *Aciēs, ēī*, f.

Be. *Sŭm, essĕ, fuī.*

Be silent. *Tăceŏ, tăcērĕ, tăcuī, tăcĭtŭm.*

Beautiful. *Pulchĕr, pulchrā, pulchrŭm.*

Before. *Antĕ*, prep. with acc.

Bird. *Avĭs, ăvĭs*, f.

Birth-day. *Nātālĭs diēs*, m.

Blame. *Vĭtŭpĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Book. *Lĭbĕr, lĭbrī*, m.

Boy. *Puĕr, puĕrī*, m.

Brave. *Fortĭs, ĕ.*

Bravely. *Fortĭtĕr*, adv.

Bravery. *Vĭrtūs, vĭrtūtĭs*, f.

Bring to a close. *Fĭnĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*

Brother. *Frāter, frātrĭs*, m.

Brutus. *Brūtus, ī*, m.

By. *A, ăb*, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

C.

Caius. *Cāĭŭs, ĭī*, m.

Call. *Vŏcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Camillus. *Cămillŭs, ī*, m.

Campanian, of Campania. *Campānŭs, ă, ŭm.*

Carthage. *Carthāgŏ, Carthāgĭnĭs*, f.

Carthaginian. *Carthāgĭnĭensĭs, ĕ.*

Carthaginian, a Carthaginian. *Carthāgĭnĭensĭs, ĭs*, m. *and* f.

Cato. *Cătŏ, Cătōnĭs*, m.

Cicero. *Cĭcĕrŏ, Cĭcĕrōnĭs*, m.

Citizen. *Cīvĭs, cīvĭs*, m. *and* f.
City. *Urbs, urbĭs*, f.
Cloud. *Nūbēs, nūbĭs*, f.
Commander. *Impĕrātŏr, impĕrātōrĭs*. m.
Concerning. *Dē*, prep. with abl.
Consul. *Consŭl, consŭlĭs*, m.
Contrary to. *Contrā*, prep. with acc.
Conversation. *Sermŏ, sermōnĭs*, m.
Corinth. *Cŏrinthŭs, ī*, f.
Corinthian. *Cŏrinthĭŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cŏrinthĭŭs, ĭī*, m.
Cornelius. *Cornēlĭŭs, ĭī*, m.
Correct. *Corrĭgŏ, corrĭgĕrĕ, correxī, correctŭm.*
Country. *Pātrĭă, ae*, f.
Courage. *Vīrtūs, vīrtūtĭs*, f
Crown. *Cŏrōnă, ae*, f.

D.

Daily. *Quŏtīdiānŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Daughter. *Fīlĭă, ae*, f.
Day. *Diēs, diēī*, m. See 120, note.
Dear. *Cārŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Declare. *Indicŏ, indicĕrĕ, indixī, indictŭm.*
Delight. *Dēlectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Desirous of. *Cŭpīdŭs, ă, ŭm; ăvīdŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Did. *Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.*
Diligence. *Dĭlĭgentĭă, ae*, f.
Diligent. *Dĭlĭgens, dĭlĭgentĭs.*
Do. *Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.*

E.

Eight. *Octŏ.* See 176.
Eighth. *Octārŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Enemy *Hostĭs, hostĭs*, m. *and* f.
Exercise. *Exercĕŏ, exercērĕ, exercŭī, exercĭtŭm.*
Exile. *Exsŭl, exsŭlĭs*, m. *and* f.
Expect. *Exspectŏ, ārĕ, ārī, ātŭm.*

F

Father. *Pătĕr, pătrĭs*, m.
Father-in-law. *Sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī*, m.
Fertile. *Fertĭlĭs, ĕ.*
Fidelity. *Fĭdēs, fĭdeī*, f.
Field. *Ager, ăgrī*, m.
Fifth. *Quintŭs, ŭ, ŭm.*
Fifty. *Quinquāgintā.* See 176.
Fight. *Pugnŏ, āre, āvī, ātŭm.*
Finish. *Fīnĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Five. *Quinquĕ.* See 176.
Flee. *Fŭgĭŏ, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm.*
Flower. *Flōs, flōrĭs*, m.
Fly. *Vŏlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Foot. *Pēs, pĕdĭs*, m.
Fond of. *Amans, ămantĭs.*
For. *Prō*, prep. with abl. In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).
Fortify. *Mūnĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Four. *Quattŭŏr.* See 176.
Fourth. *Quartŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Friend. *Amīcŭs, ī*, m.
Friendship. *Amīcĭtĭă, ae*, f.
From. *A, ăb*, prep. with abl.
Fruit. *Fructŭs, ūs*, m.

G.

Garden. *Hortŭs, ī*, m.
Gaul. *Gallŭs, ī*, m.
Gem. *Gemmă, ae*, f.
General. *Dux, dŭcĭs*, m. *and* f.
Gift. *Dōnŭm, ī*, n.
Glory. *Glōrĭă, ae*, f.
Gold. *Aurŭm, ī*, n.
Golden. *Aureŭs, ă, ŭm.*

Good. *Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Goodness. *Bŏnĭtās, bŏnĭtātĭs,* f.
Govern. *Rĕjŏ, rĕjĕrĕ, rexī, rectum.*
Great. *Magnŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Greece. *Graecĭă, ae,* f.
Grove. *Lūcŭs, ī,* m.
Guard. *Custōdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*

H.

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*
Hannibal. *Hannĭbăl, Hannĭbălĭs,* m.
Happy. *Beātŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Have. *Hăbeŏ, hŭbērĕ, hăbŭī, hăbĭtŭm.* Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we *have* loved.
He, she, it. *Is, eă, ĭd: illĕ, illă, illŭd.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.
He himself. *Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm.*
Hear. *Audiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
High. *Altŭs, altă, altŭm.*
Himself. *Suī* (184); *ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm.*
His. *Suŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Hope (verb). *Spērŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Hope (noun). *Spēs, spĕī,* f.
Hour. *Hōră, ae,* f.
Hundred. *Centŭm.* See 176.

I.

I. *Egŏ, meī.* See 184.
In. *In,* prep. with abl.
In behalf of. *Prō,* prep. with abl.
Instruct. *Erŭdiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Instructor. *Praeceptŏr, praeceptōrĭs,* m.
Into. *In,* prep. with acc.
Invite. *Invītŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Iron. *Ferrŭm, ī,* n.
Island. *Insŭlă, ae,* f.
It. See *he, she, it.*
Italy. *Ităliă, ae,* f.

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, jūdĭcĭs,* m. *and* f.
Justice. *Justĭtiă, ae,* f.

K.

Keep one's word. *Fĭdĕm servārĕ.* See p. 74, note 4.
Kindly. *Bĕnignē,* adv.
King. *Rex, rēgĭs,* m.
Knowledge. *Scientiă, ae,* f.

L.

Large. *Magnŭs, ă. ŭm.*
Latinus. *Lătīnŭs, ī,* m.
Lavinia. *Lăvīniă, ae,* f.
Law. *Lex, lēgĭs,* f.
Lead. *Dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm.*
Lead back. *Rĕdūcŏ, rĕdūcĕrĕ, rĕduxī, rĕductŭm.*
Lead forth. *Edūcŏ, ēdūcĕrĕ, ēduxī, ēductŭm.*
Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.
Leader. *Dux, dŭcĭs,* m. *and* f.
Letter. *Epistŏlă, ae,* f.
Liberate. *Lībĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Life. *Vītă, ae,* f.
Like. *Sīmĭlĭs, ĕ.*
Love. *Amŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

M.

Macedonia. *Măcĕdŏniă, ae,* f.
Man. *Hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs,* m. *Vĭr, vĭrī,* m. The latter is used as a term of respect; *a true* or *worthy man, a hero.*
Many. *Multī, ae, ă,* plur.
May. *A sign of the Present Subjunctive.*
May have. *A sign of the Perfect Subjunctive.*
Me. See *I.*
Memory. *Mĕmŏriă, ae,* f.

Might, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*
Might have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*
Mind. *Anĭmŭs, ī,* m.
Moat. *Fossă, ae,* f.
Money. *Pĕcūnĭă, ae,* f.
Month. *Mensĭs, mensĭs,* m.
More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.
Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.
Mound. *Aggĕr, aggĕrĭs,* m.
Mountain. *Mons, montĭs,* m.
Much. *Multŭm,* adv.
My. *Meŭs, ă, ŭm.* See 185.

N.

Name. *Nōmĕn, nōmĭnĭs,* n.
Nightingale. *Luscĭnĭă, ae,* f.
Noble. *Nōbĭlĭs, ĕ.*
Not. *Nōn,* adv. Interrogative, *nonnĕ.*

O.

Obey. *Pārĕō, pārērĕ, pārŭī, pārĭtŭm.*
Observe. *Servŏ, ārĕ, ārī, ātŭm.*
Occupy. *Occŭpŏ, ārĕ, ārī, ātŭm.*
Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.
Of itself. *Pĕr sē.*
On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.
One. *Unŭs, ă, ŭm.* See 175.
Oration. *Orātĭŏ, ōrātĭōnĭs,* f.
Orator. *Orātŏr, ōrātōrĭs,* m.
Our. *Nostĕr, tră, trŭm.*

P.

Parent. *Părens, părentĭs,* m. *and* f.
Philip. *Phĭlippŭs, ī,* m.
Pisistratus. *Pisistrătŭs, ī,* m.
Please. *Plăcĕŏ, plăcērĕ, plăcuī, plăcĭtŭm.*
Pleasing. *Grātŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Pleasure. *Vŏluptās, vŏluptātĭs,* f.
Plough. *Arŏ, ārārĕ, ārārī, ārātŭm.*
Plunder (verb). *Spŏlĭŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Practise. *Exercĕŏ, exercērĕ, exercuī, exercĭtŭm; cŏlŏ, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm.*
Praise (verb). *Laudŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Praise (noun). *Laus, laudĭs,* f.
Precept. *Praeceptŭm, ī,* n.
Predict. *Praedĭcŏ, praedĭcĕrĕ, praedixī, praedictŭm.*
Present (noun). *Dōnŭm, ī.* n.
Publius. *Publĭŭs, ĭī,* m.
Punish. *Pūnĭŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Pupil. *Discĭpŭlŭs, ī,* m.
Put to flight. *Fŭgŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Q.

Queen. *Rēgīnă, ae,* f.

R.

Receive. *Accĭpĭŏ, accĭpĕrĕ, accēpī, acceptŭm.*
Reign, royal authority. *Regnŭm, ī,* n.
Renowned. *Clārŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Reside. *Hăbĭtŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Rhine. *Rhēnŭs, ī,* m.
River. *Amnĭs, ămnĭs,* m.
Roman. *Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Roman, a Roman. *Rōmānŭs, ī,* m.
Rome. *Rōma, ae,* f.
Romulus. *Rōmŭlŭs, ī,* m.
Rule. *Rĕgŏ, rĕgĕrĕ, rexī, rectŭm.*

S.

Safety. *Sălūs, sălūtĭs,* f.
Same. *Ĭdĕm, ĕădĕm, ĭdĕm.* See 186.
Say. *Dīcŏ, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm.*

Save. *Servŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Scipio. *Scipiŏ, Scīpiōnīs,* m.
Senator. *Sĕnātŏr, sĕnātōrīs,* m.
Serve. *Serviŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Servius. *Serviŭs, ĭī,* m.
Setting. *Occāsŭs, ūs,* m.
Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*
Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*
Shepherd. *Pastŏr, pastōrīs,* m.
Should, should have. See *might, might have.*
Show. *Monstrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Sicily. *Sĭcĭlĭă, ae,* f.
Silent. See *be silent.*
Silver. *Argentŭm,* ī, n.
Sing. *Cantŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Singing, a song. *Cantŭs, ūs,* m.
Six. *Sex* See 176.
Slave. *Servŭs,* ī, m.
Sleep. *Dormiŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.*
Soldier. *Mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs,* m.
Somebody, some one. *Alĭquīs, ălĭquă, ălĭquīd,* or *ălĭquŏd.* See 191.
Son. *Fīlĭŭs,* ĭī, m.
Son-in-law. *Gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī,* m.
Song. *Carmĕn, carmĭnīs,* n.
Speak. *Dīcŏ, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm.*
State. *Cīvĭtās, cīvĭtātīs,* f.
Strengthen. *Firmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Sun. *Sōl, sōlīs,* m.
Sunset. *Occāsŭs sōlīs.*
Sword. *Glădiŭs,* ĭī, m.

T.

Take. *Căpiŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm.*
Take by storm. *Expugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Tarquin. *Tarquĭnĭŭs,* ĭī, m.
Tell *Dīcŏ, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm.*
Temple. *Templŭm,* ī, n.
Ten. *Dĕcĕm.* See 176.
Terrify. *Terreŏ, terrērĕ, terruī, territŭm.*
Than. *Quăm.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.
That. *Illĕ, illă, illŭd.* See 186
The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.
Their. *Suŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Then. *Tŭm,* adv.
Thing. *Rēs, rēī,* f.
This. *Hīc, haec, hŏc.* See 186.
Three. *Trēs, trĭă.* See 175.
Time. *Tempŭs, tempŏrĭs,* n.
To. *Ad, ĭn,* preps. with acc. *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384.
True. *Vērŭs, ă ŭm.*
Truth. *Vērŭm,* ī, n.
Tullia. *Tullĭă, ae,* f.
Two. *Duŏ, duae, duŏ.* See 175.
Tyrant. *Tȳrannŭs,* ī, m.

U.

Use. *Usus, ūs,* m.
Useful. *Utĭlĭs, ĕ.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, virtūtĭs,* f.
Valuable. *Prĕtĭōsŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.
Victoria. *Victōrĭă, ae,* f.
Victory. *Victōrĭŭ, ae,* f.
Violate. *Viōlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
Virtue. *Virtūs, virtūtĭs,* f.

W.

Walk. *Ambŭlŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*
War. *Bellŭm,* ī, n.

Way. *Vĭă, ae,* f.

Well. *Bĕnĕ,* adv.

Who, which (relative). *Quī, quae, quŏd.* See 187.

Who, which, what (interrogative)? *Quĭs, quae, quĭd? quī, quae, quŏd?* See 188.

Wide. *Lātŭs, ă, ŭm.*

Wife. *Conjux, conjŭgĭs,* f.

Will, will have. See *shall, shall have.*

Winter. *Hiems, hiĕmĭs,* f.

Wisdom. *Săpientiă, ae,* f.

Wise. *Săpiens, săpientĭs.*

With. *Cum,* prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

Word. *Verbŭm, ī,* n. To keep one's word, *fĭdĕm servārĕ.* See p. 74, note 4.

Would, would have. See *might, might have.*

Wound. *Vulnĕrō, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm.*

Write. *Scrībō, scrībĕrĕ, scripsī, scriptŭm.*

Y.

Year. *Annŭs, ī,* m.

You. *Tū, tuī.* See 184.

Your. *Tuŭs, ă, ŭm; vestĕr, vestrā, vestrŭm.*

Yourself. *Tū, tū ipsĕ.*